

UNIVERSITY OF GOTHENBURG
DEPARTMENT OF LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES
P.O.B. 200 • SE 405 30 GOTHENBURG

We offer [net-based distance courses](#) in Somali
free of charge for citizens of the EU and EEA

BEGINNER'S SOMALI PART 2

*Assembled, adapted and tone-marked by
Morgan Nilsson*

Updated
3 April 2024
Valid for Spring Term 2024

*This is work in progress. Read it critically!
Feel free to contact me with comments.*

morgan.nilsson@gu.se

Preface

The majority of texts in this reader have been collected from different Somali schoolbooks published since the beginning of the 1970's until today, in Mogadishu and Hargeysa, as well as in Ethiopia. Where necessary, some of the texts have been slightly adapted (orthographically standardised, grammatically or factually corrected, lexically or syntactically simplified etc.), and most of the texts have been tone-marked.

The dialogues were originally published in a textbook called *Beginning in Somali*, written before the introduction of Somali as the official language of Somalia. Since no official orthography had then been agreed upon, the textbook was written in a unique phonetic script. Therefore, with the kind encouragement of Richard D. Molitor, one of the original authors, the dialogues have been transcribed in today's standard Somali orthography.

[Mp3 files with recordings of almost all the texts can be found here.](#)

Many of the original publications can be retrieved from [Archivio Somalia](#):

J.J. Pia, P.D. Black & M.I. Samater. 1966. [Beginning in Somali](#). Syracuse University, NY.

J.J. Pia & R.D. Molitor. 1969. [Reading in Somali: An Elementary Cultural Reader. Volume I: Reader](#). Syracuse University, NY.

J.J. Pia & R.D. Molitor. 1969. [Reading in Somali: An Elementary Cultural Reader. Volume II: Pony and Glossary](#). Syracuse University, NY.

Speakers

| | |
|--------|---------------------|
| 1 / B1 | man from Beledweyne |
| 2 / M2 | man from Mogadishu |
| 3 / M3 | man from Mogadishu |
| 4 / K4 | man from Kismaayo |
| 5 / H5 | man from Hargeisa |

Symbols

Abbreviations

| | |
|-----|---------------------------|
| Ar. | (borrowing from) Arabic |
| BSG | Beginner's Somali Grammar |
| BSR | Beginner's Somali Reader |
| En. | (borrowing from) English |
| Hi. | (borrowing from) Hindi |
| It. | (borrowing from) Italian |
| N | more common in the north |
| N | |
| Pe. | (borrowing from) Persian |
| s | more common in the south |
| S | someone / something |
| SNG | |
| Sw. | (borrowing from) Swahili |

Förkortningar

| |
|----------------------------|
| (lånord från) arabiskan |
| Beginner's Somali Reader |
| (lånord från) engelskan |
| (lånord från) hindi |
| (lånord från) italienskan |
| vanligare i norr |
| någon / något |
| (lånord från) persiskan |
| vanligare i söder |
| Somalisk nybörjargrammatik |
| (lånord från) swahili |

Cutubka koowaad

Cutubka 1aad

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455524>

1.1 Layliyo

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|----|----|--|---|----|
| 1 | 2 | | 5 | | 8 | 10 |
| | | 13 | 15 | | | 19 |

Buuxi meelaha bannaan!

| | | |
|----|----|----|
| 70 | 71 | 72 |
| 45 | | 47 |
| | 30 | |
| 97 | | 99 |
| | 90 | |
| 9 | | 11 |

| | | |
|----|----|----|
| 36 | | |
| 62 | | |
| 40 | 41 | 42 |
| | 68 | |
| | 79 | 80 |
| 14 | | 16 |

Qor tirooyinka maqan!

cútub -ka *chapter | kapitel*
layáli -ga, plur. layliyó, -áda
exercise | övning
buuxiyaa *fills | fyller*
meél, meésha, plur. meeló, -áha
place | plats
bannaán (adj.) *empty, vacant, free*
| *tom, ledig*

tíro -áda, plur. tiroóyin -ka
number | tal
maqán *missing | som saknas*

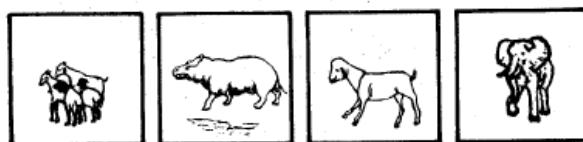
arday dugsi mundul
beer gabar nin
bisad galley webi
calan ilmo wiil



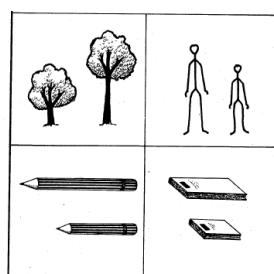
ari kurdad masar
awr libaax naag

daayeer maroodi shaati
jeer maqal surwaal

shaáti -ga *shirt* | *skjorta*
surwáal -ka (sg.) (Ar.) *trousers* |
byxor



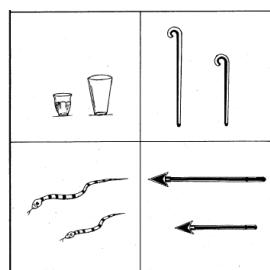
Ku qor erayada sawirrada hoostooda!



Kee dheer?

éray -ga, pl. erayó -áda *word* | *ord*
sáwir -ka, pl. sawirró -áda *picture*
| *bild*
hoostooda *under them* | *under dem*

kee? *which one?* | *vilken?*



Kee gaaban?

1.2 Eraygee baa ku habboon sawirka?



wiish wiil kiish wiig



bisin bil bisad bisil



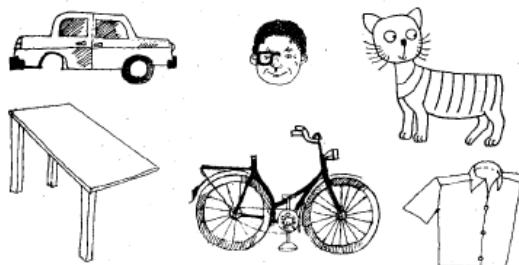
gaban gabay gadh garbar



ilig ilmo ilbax ilays

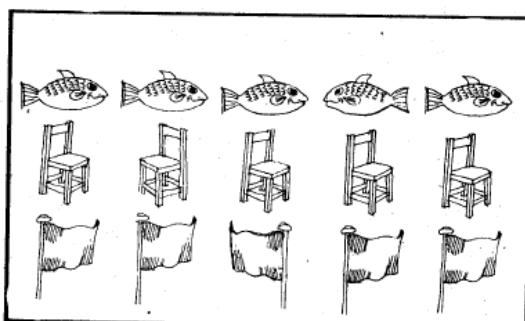
-geé which | vilket

kú habboón suitable for | passande
för



Wax baa ka maqan.
Dhammaystir sawirka!

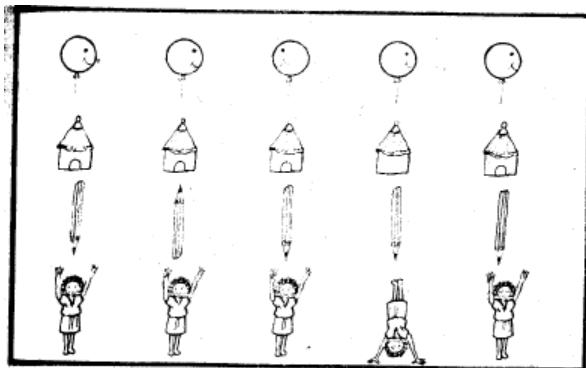
dhammaýstir (imp.) finish, make
something complete | avsluta,
gör färdig, komplettera



Mid baa ka duwan.
Ku sawir "X"!

míd -ka (independent form) one
(thing), one (object) | en (sak),
ett (föremål)

ká duwán different (from) |
annorlunda (än), olik



Maxaa ka duwan? Ku sawir "X"!



ardaa arbe aragtí arday



calan cagaf cag cafi



dugaag dugsi dugsoon dugsasho



beel been beer beegid

dugsoón (adj.) *protecting, warm, thick* | *skyddande (tät, tjock, varm)*

Eraygee baa ku habboon sawirka? Xarriiq hoos mari!

xarriiq -da *line* | *streck*

hoos (adv.) *under, down* | *under*

mári (imp.) *spread, apply* | *bred ut, stryk ut*

1.3 Tani ma Aaminaa?



Kani ma Axmed baa? - Maya.

Kani ma Cumar baa? - Maya.

Kani ma Cali baa? - Haa.



Tani ma Aaminaa? - Maya.

Tani ma Safiyaa? - Maya.

Tani ma Sahraa? - Haa.



- Kani ma Cumar baa?
- Maya. Kani waa Axmed.



- Tani ma Sahraa?
- Maya. Tani waa Safiya.

1.4 Wakhti

Waa immisadii.^N

wakhti / waqtⁱ-ga time | tid
meeqa^S = immisa^N how much?

Waa meeqa saac.^S

how many? | hur mycket? hur
många?
saac -a hour | timme



Waa shantii.^N

Waa shan saac.^S



Waa sagaalkii.^N

Waa sagaal saac.^S



Waa kowdii.^N

Waa hal saac.^S



Waa saddexdii iyo badhkii.^N

bádh^N / bár^S-ka half | halva, hälft

Waa saddex saac iyo bar.^S



Waa toddobadii iyo badhkii.^N

Waa toddoba saac iyo bar.^S

Af Soomaali 2, 1994: 151

1.5 Magacaygu waa Faadumo



Magacaygu waa Faadumo.

Aabbahay magaciisu waa Maxamed.

Hooyaday magaceedu waa Aamina.

Waxa aan leeyahay hal walaal.

Magaciisu waa Xasan.

Waxa aan leeyahay laba gabdhood oo
walaalahay ah.

Magacyadoodu waa Xaawo iyo Caasho.

ah (reduced) being, that is, which is
| som är

Maxaa aad leedahay adigu?

Qor qoraal gaaban oo ku saabsan
qoyskaaga.

qoráal -ka text | text
kú saabsán (adj.) about, regarding
| angående, om

Af Soomaali, Fasalka 2aad, Hargeysa 2010: 2

1.6 Kani waa Xasan



Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga hoose ee
Sheekh Bashiir.

Isagu waa fasalka 3aad (saddexaad).

Dugsiga waxa uu u qaataa shaati
buluug ah iyo surwaal midabka
dambaska leh.

Magaca macallinkiisu waa Cabdi.

aadaa, aaddaa goes (to), is off (to),
sets out (to) | går (i)
hoosé (adj.) lower | nedre, undre
shéekh -a sheikh | schejk
saddexaad (adj.) third | tredje

qaataa, qaadataa takes, puts on |
tar (på sig)
bulúug -ga (En.) blue colour, blue
thing | blå färg, blå sak
bulúug ah blue | blå
mídab -ka colour | färg
dambás -ka ash | aska
mídabka dambáska ash grey
colour | grå färg, askans färg
mídabka dambáska leh grey, ash
grey | grå, askgrå

Weydiimo

Ka jawaab weydiimahan.

1. Xasan waa fasalkee?

2. Dharka dugsiga ee Xasan waa
midabkee?

3. Macallinka af-Soomaaliga ee Xasan
magaciis?

ká jawáab (imp.) (Ar.) answer [a
question] | svara (på), besvara

áf -ka mouth; language | mun;
språk
af-Soomáali -ga Somali, the Somali
language | somaliska språket

4. Macallinkaaga af-Soomaaliga magaciis?

Af Soomaali, Fasalka 2aad, Hargeysa 2010: 3

1.7 Magacaygu waa Caasho



Magacaygu waa Caasho.

Waxa aan aadaa dugsiga hoose ee
Sheekh Bashiir.

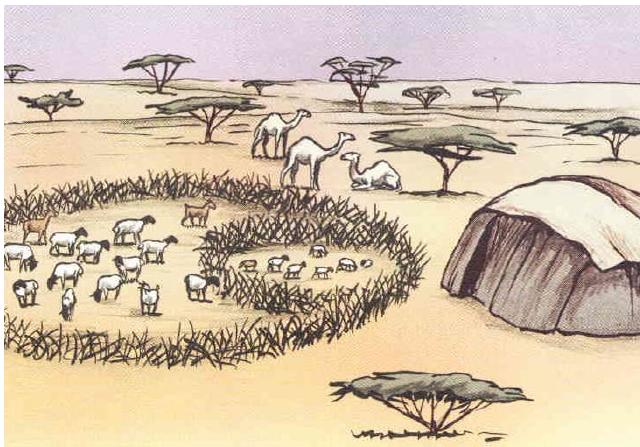
Waxa aan dhigtaa fasalka 2aad
(labaad).

Waxa aan dugsiga u qaataa jilbaab
hurdi ah iyo cambuur buluug ah.

dhigtaa, dhigataa *studies* |
studerar
labaád (adj.) second | *andra*
jilbáab -ka *long woman's*
overgarment, veil | *slöja, kappa,*
dok
húrdi -ga *yellow colour, yellow*
thing | *gul färg, gul sak*
húrdi ah *yellow* | *gul*
cambúur -ka *dress, robe* |
kläning, tunika

Af Soomaali, Fasalka 2aad, Hargeysa 2010: 4

1.8 Geeddi gurigooda



gúri -ga, pl. guryó *house | hus*

Kani waa Geeddi gurigooda. Geeddi qoyskoodu waa reer-guuraa. Reer-guuraagu kolba meel bay u guuraan. Guryaha reer-guuraaga si fudud baa loo dhisi karaa.

Sawir guriga reer-guuraaga iyo arigii oo xeraysan.

fudúd (adj.) *easy, light (not heavy)*
| *lätt*

kól -ka, pl. kolál *moment, time |*
tidpunkt

kolba *constantly, all the time |*
ständigt, hela tiden

reer-guuraa -ga (coll.) *nomads |*
nomader

guuraa, guurtaa *moves | flyttar*
loó < *la+u *one ... in | man ... på*

si fudud + u *in a simple manner,*
easily | på ett enkelt sätt, lätt

xeraysán (adj.) *penned, enclosed |*
instängd, inhägnad

Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 1aad, Muqdisho & Hargeysa 2001: 31

1.9 Wadahadallo 25-26

25.0

- Xaggee baad ku dhalatay?
- Waxaan ku dhashay Burco.

25.1

- Iska warran.
- Nabad.
- Xaggee baad ku dhalatay?
- Waxaan ku dhashay Burco.

25.2

- Magacaa?
- Waa Yuunis magacaygu.
- Xaggee baad ku dhalatay?
- Muqdisho baan ku dhashay.

25.3

- Magacaygu waa Cali. Magacaa?
- Xirsi.
- Xaggee baad ku dhalatay?
- Waxaan ku dhashay Ceerigaabo.

26.0

- Ma Hargeysa baad ku dhalatay?
- Maya. Waxaan ku dhashay Muqdisho.

26.1

- Ma nabad baa?
- Waa nabad.
- Ma Muqdisho baad ku dhalatay?
- Maya. Waxaan ku dhashay Afgooye.

1. Erayo cusub

Quizlet 2.01, Somali-English: <https://quizlet.com/508116279/>

Quizlet 2.01, somaliska-svenska: <https://quizlet.com/384208517/>

| | | |
|--|--|-------------------------------------|
| aadaa, aaddaa | goes (to), is off (to), sets out (to) | går (i) |
| áf (m.) | mouth; language | mun; språk |
| af-Soomaáli (m.) | Somali, the Somali language | somaliska språket |
| bádh ^N /bár ^S (m.) | half | halva, hälft |
| bannaán (adj.) | empty, vacant, free | tom, ledig |
| bulúug (m.) (from Eng.) | blue colour, blue thing | blå färg, blå sak |
| bulúug ah | blue | blå |
| cambúur (m.) | dress, robe | kläckning, tunika |
| dambás (m.) | ash | aska |
| mídabka dambáska | ash grey colour | grå färg, askans färg |
| mídabka dambáska | grey, ash grey | grå, askgrå |
| leh | | |
| dhammaýstir (imp.) | finish, make something complete | avsluta, gör färdig, komplettera |
| dhigtaa, dhigataa | studies | studerar |
| [ká] duwán | different [from] | annorlunda [än], olik |
| hoos (adv.) | under, down | under |
| hoosé (adj.) | lower | nedre, undre |
| horé (adj.) | first, frontal | främst, först |
| húrdi (m.) | yellow colour, yellow thing | gul färg, gul sak |
| húrdi ah | yellow | gul |
| [ká] jawáab (imp.) (Ar.) | answer [to (a question)] | svara [på], besvara |
| jílbáab (m.) | long woman's overgarment, veil | slöja, kappa, dok |
| labaád (adj.) | second | andra |
| már (m.) | time | gång |
| márka horé | first (of all) | först |
| mári (imp.) | spread, apply | bred ut, stryk ut |
| míd (m.) (independent form) | one (thing), one (object) | en (sak), ett (föremål) |
| mídab (m.) | colour | färg |
| mídabka dambáska | ash grey colour | grå färg, askans färg |
| mídabka dambáska | grey, ash grey | grå, askgrå |
| leh | | |
| qaataa, qaadataa | takes, puts on | tar (på sig) |
| qoráal (m.) | text | text |

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| [kú] saabsán (adj.) | <i>about, regarding</i> | <i>angående, om</i> |
| saárayaa | <i>is putting</i> | <i>lägger, placerar</i> |
| saddexaád (adj.) | <i>third</i> | <i>tredje</i> |
| shaáti (m.) | <i>shirt</i> | <i>skjorta</i> |
| shéekh (m.) | <i>sheikh</i> | <i>schejk</i> |
| surwáal (m. sg.) (Ar.) | <i>trousers</i> | <i>byxor</i> |
| xarriíq (f.) | <i>line</i> | <i>streck</i> |

1. Word formation

| | | |
|---------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| bartaa, barataa | <i>he, she learns</i> | <i>han, hon lär sig</i> |
| baránayaa | <i>is learning</i> | <i>håller på att lära sig</i> |
| barásho, barasháda | <i>(the) learning</i> | <i>lärande, lärandet</i> |
| barashó wanaagsán | <i>nice to meet you, literally good learning (to know you)</i> | <i>trevigt att träffas</i> |

The ending **-asho** is used to form nouns of all the verbs in group 3.

Med ändelsen **-asho** bildar man substantiv av alla verb i grupp 3.

| | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| qoraa, qortaa | <i>writes</i> | <i>skriver</i> |
| qoráal | <i>text, writing</i> | <i>text, skrivande</i> |

The ending **-aal** is used to form nouns of certain verbs.

Med ändelsen **-aal** bildar man substantiv av vissa verb.

Ordinal numbers

All ordinal numbers are formed by addition of the adjectival ending **-aád**. Ordningstal bildas med adjektivändelsen **-aád**.

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|------------|--------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|
| ków | <i>one</i> | <i>ett</i> | 1aad = kowaád / koowaád | <i>first</i> | <i>första</i> |
| lába / lábo | <i>two</i> | <i>två</i> | 2aad = labaád | | <i>second</i> <i>andra</i> |
| sáddex | <i>three</i> | <i>tre</i> | 3aad = saddexaád | | <i>third</i> <i>tredje</i> |

1. Grammar in focus

Questions with *kee/tee*

The English question word *which?* corresponds to the independent question words **keé** (masc. sing.), **teé** (fem. sing.) *which one?* and **kuweé** (plural) *which ones?* as well as the endings **-keé** / **-teé**. These endings make the high tone disappear from the stem of the noun itself.

| | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| hál | <i>place</i> | <i>plats</i> |
| hálka | <i>the place</i> | <i>platsen</i> |
| halkeé? | <i>which place?, where?</i> | <i>vilken plats?, var?, vart?</i> |

Words with this ending count as focused even if they are not followed by the focus particle **baa** or **ayaa**. If the question word is the subject of the sentence, focusing it leads to consequences for the form of the verb. The present tense form of **yahay** *is* disappears completely.

Det svenska frågeordet **vilken?** motsvaras av pronomenen **keé**, **teé** *vilken*, *vilket* och **kuweé** *vilka* samt ändelserna **-keé** / **-teé**. Ändelserna gör även att betoningen försvinner från substantivets stam.

Ord med den här ändelsen räknas i de allra flesta fall som fokuserade även om de inte följs av fokuspartikeln **baa** eller **ayaa**. Detta kan förstås få konsekvenser för verbet. Presens av **yahay** är utelämnas helt.

Keé (baa) dhéer Ø ?

Which one is long (the longest)? Vilken är lång (längst)?

Keé (ayaa) gaabán Ø ?

Which one is short (the shortest)? Vilken är kort (kortast)?

Focused subject

If the subject of the clause is focused by **baa**, **ayaa** or **waxa(a)** there cannot be any short subject pronoun and the verb is in its reduced form.

The present tense of **yahay is** disappears completely after adjectives when the subject is focused.

Om satsens subjekt är fokuserat med **baa**, **ayaa** eller **waxa(a)** får man inte använda något subjektspronomen och verbet står i reducerad form.

Presens av **yahay är** utelämnas helt efter adjektiv när subjektet är fokuserat.

Míd baa ká duwán Ø.

ONE is different (than...). *EN är annorlunda (än...).*

Wáx baa ká maqán Ø.

SOMETHING is absent (from...). *NÅGONTING är frånvarande (från...).*

SOMETHING is missing. *NÅGONTING saknas.*

Eraygeé baa kú habboón Ø sáwirka?

WHICH WORD is suitable for the picture?

VILKET ORD är passande till bilden?

WHICH WORD suits the picture? VILKET ORD är passar till bilden?

The word **maxáa** is always focused since it is a contraction of **maxaý + baa**. When it is the subject the focus has consequences for the verb form.

Ordet **maxáa** är i sig alltid fokuserat eftersom det är en sammandragning av **maxaý + baa**. Om det är subjekt får det konsekvenser för verbets form.

Maxáa ká duwán Ø ?

WHAT is different (than ...)? VAD är annorlunda (än ...)?

Yes/no questions

One common type of question contains the particle **ma** + the focus particle **baa**.

En vanlig typ av fråga innehåller frågepartikeln **ma** + fokuspartikeln **baa**.

Kani ma Áxmed baa?

Is this Ahmed?

Är detta Ahmed?

Tani ma Sáhraa?

Is this Sahra?

Är detta Sahra?

Obligatory contractions

Feminine names that end in **-a/-o** are always contracted with the focus particle **baa**.

Feminina namn som slutar på **-a/-o** dras alltid samman med fokuspartikeln **baa**.

Aamina + baa > Aamínaa

In colloquial Somali this happens with all kinds of nouns, but it is usually avoided in the written language.

I talspråk sker detta med alla möjliga substantiv, men det undviks oftast i skrift.

Telling the time

Numbers used for telling the time are accompanied by the demonstrative ending **-kii/-tii** that signalises that something constitutes common knowledge to the speaker and the listener.

Siffror i klockslag uttrycks med den demonstrativa ändelsen **-kii/-tii** som anger något som utgör en gemensam bekant information.

Waa immisadii?

What time is it? Hur mycket är den (klockan)?

Waa shantii.

It's five o'clock. Den är fem.

Waa kowdii iyo badhkii. *It's half past one. Den är halv två.*

It might possibly be because the hours are a well known concept that can be expected to be familiar.

Möjligt kan det bero på att timmarna är allmänt kända. De återkommer ju på samma sätt varje dag.

An illustration – from real life in Ethiopia – of the different ways to tell time according to the international system and the East African system, where you start counting from daybreak and then start over again at sunset. One o'clock after daybreak according to East African time is equal to seven o'clock in the morning according to international time.

Both clocks in the picture show the same time in the morning or evening, 9.18 according to international time = 3.18 according to the East African system, counting from daybreak or from sunset.

The East African time is dominating in Ethiopia, and it is very common also in southern Somalia, Kenya etc., but hardly ever used in Somaliland and Djibouti.



Two modifiers

If a noun is followed by two modifying words then the second one must be preceded by a conjunction.

If the head noun is indefinite **oo** is used.

If the head noun is definite **ee** is used.

Notice that **laba** is a noun and that **gabdhood** counts as the first modifier of **laba**.

Also notice that **laba** is indefinite.

Om man har två beskrivande attribut efter samma substantiv måste det andra föregås av en konjunktion.

Om substantivet är obestämt används **oo**. Om substantivet är bestämt används **ee**.

Observera att **laba** är ett substantiv och att **gabdhood** blir den första bestämningen till **laba**.

Observera också att **laba** är obestämt.

labá gabdhood oo walaaló ah *two girls that are siblings (i.e. two sisters)*
två flickor som är syskon (dvs. två systrar)

labá wiil oo walaaló ah *two boys that are siblings (i.e. two brothers)*
två pojkar som är syskon (dvs. två bröder)

dúgsiga hoosé ee Shéekh Bashíir *the Sheikh Bashir primary school*
Shejk Bashirs lågstadieskola

macállinka af-Soomááliga ee Xasan *Hassan's teacher of Somali*
Hassans lärare i somaliska

dhárka dúgsiga ee Xasan *Hassan's clothes for school*
Hassans skolkläder

Question words without focus

Somali question words are most often accompanied by one of the focus particles **baa** or **ayaa**. If not, then the sentence particle **waa** is used.

Om en fråga som innehåller ett frågeord eller det interrogativa suffixet **-kee/-tee**, så används inte frågepartikeln **ma**, utan i stället satstypspartikeln **waa** som annars huvudsakligen används i påståenden, t.ex.

Dharka Xasan waa midabkee? *Hassan's clothes are which colour?*
Vilken färg är (det på) Hassans kläder?

The particle **ma** is only used in polar questions (yes/no-questions).

Nouns as modifiers

Somali doesn't use as many adjectives as English. Instead nouns are often used to describe other nouns. They are often connected by the word **ah** which is. This is the REDUCED or RELATIVE form of **yahay**. This form is used similarly to the present participle in many other languages (*being*).

Somaliskan använder färre adjektiv än svenska. I stället används ofta substantiv för att beskriva andra substantiv. De förs samman med hjälp av **ah som är** som är den REDUCERADE eller RELATIVA formen av **yahay**. Denna form fungerar ungefär som presens particip i andra språk (*being*).

nin Soomaali ah
man Somali who.is
a Somali man
en somalisk man

naag Soomaali ah
woman Somali who.is
a Somali woman
en somalisk kvinna

shaati buluug ah
shirt a.blue.thing that.is
a blue shirt
en blå skjorta

Another common way of doing it is to use the word **leh** having, who has, that has. A common translation is *with*.

Ett annat vanligt sätt att göra samma sak är med hjälp av adjektivet **leh havande, som har**. En vanlig översättning är även *med*.

surwáal mídabka dambáska leh
trousers the.colour the.ash having
grey trousers, trousers with ash grey colour
grå byxor, byxor med askgrå färg (ordagrant: *byxor som har askans färg*)

Short possessive endings in questions

When you ask about a persons name you use the short possessive ending. Only the possessive ending has a high tone, not the noun itself, just like when you ask a question using the ending -éé.

När man frågar efter någons namn används korta possessiva ändelser. Betoningen ligger bara på den sista vokalen, på samma sätt som vid ändelsen -éé.

| | | |
|------------------|--|--|
| Magaceé? | <i>Which name?</i> | <i>Vilket namn?</i> |
| Magacáa? | <i>Your name? i.e. What's your name?</i> | <i>Ditt namn?</i> idiomatiskt: <i>Vad/Vilket är ditt namn?</i> |
| Magacéed? | <i>Her name? i.e. What's her name?</i> | <i>Hennes namn?</i> idiomatiskt: <i>Vad/Vilket är hennes namn?</i> |

Magacíis? *His name? i.e. What's his name?*

Hans namn? idiomatiskt: *Vad/Vilket är hans namn?*

The 3rd conjugation

Verbs in the 3rd conjugation have two different stems. One stem ends in the consonant **-t-** or **-d-**. This stem is used before ending that begin with a vowel. The other stem ends with the vowel **-a-** (or **-o-** in a few verbs). This stem is used before ending that begin with a consonant.

present 1/3 sing. m.

dhigt-aa *studies*

present 2/3 sing. f.

dhiga-taa *studerar*

If **-t-** in the consonant stem is preceded by a vowel, then the corresponding vowel stem ends in **-da-**.

present 1/3 sing. m.

qaat-aa *takes*

present 2/3 sing. f.

qaada-taa *tar*

It is important to notice these verbs carefully in order not to confuse the masculine form of these verbs with the feminine form of other verbs.

Verb i 3:e konjugationen har två olika stammar. Den ena stammen slutar på konsonanten **-t-** eller **-d-**. Den används framför ändelser som börjar med vokal. Den andra stammen slutar på vokalen **-a-** (i ett par verb på **-o-**). Den används framför ändelser som börjar med konsonant.

socd-aa *walks*

soco-taa *går*

Om konsonantstammens **-t-** föregås av en vokal slutar motsvarande vokalstam på **-da-**.

Det är viktigt att vara observant på dessa verb så att man inte av misstag råkar tro att den maskulina formen är en feminin form.

1. Layliyo

1.1 Yes / No-Questions

Use *ma* instead of *waa*, *baa*, *ayaa*, *waxa*.

Waa aan shaqaynayaa. 'I am working.'

Ma (aad) shaqaynaysaa? 'Are you working?'

Waxa aan ka shaqeeyaa dukaankan. 'I work in this shop.'

Ma (aad) ka shaqaysaa dukaankan? 'Do you work in this shop?'

Change these declarative sentences into yes/no-questions.

Also change 1st person verbs and pronouns into 2nd person.

1. Waxa aan leeyahay hal walaal.

2. Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

3. Waxa aan dhigtaa fasalka 2aad (labaad).

4. Hooyo cunto ayaa ay karinaysaa.

1.2 Questions with TO BE

Is it...? ma ... baa? or miyaa? (< *ma+ayaa)

Is it Ahmed? Ma Axmed baa? Axmed miyaa?

Is this Ahmed? Kani ma Axmed baa? Kani Axmed miyaa?

Is it your mother? Ma hooyadaa baa? Hooyadaa miyaa?

Is it Sahra? Ma Sahraa? (< *Sahra+baa) Sahra miyaa?

Is this Sahra? Tani ma Sahraa? Tani Sahra miyaa?

* means 'is not used'

Change these declarative sentences into yes/no-questions.

Also change 1st person verbs and pronouns into 2nd person.

11. Magacaygu waa Faadumo.
12. Aabbahay magaciisu waa Maxamed.
13. Hooyaday magaceedu waa Aamina.
14. Magaca macallinkiisu waa Cabdi.
15. Geeddi qoyskoodu waa reer guuraa.

1.3 Question word + TO BE

What is it? Waa maxay?

What is this? Kani waa maxay? Waa maxay kani?

Who is it? Waa kuma? Waa tuma?

Who is this? Kani waa kuma? Kani waa tuma?

Waa kuma kani? Waa tuma tani?

Questions with ordinary verbs usually have focus on the question word

| no focus | focus | |
|----------|--------------------|--------|
| maxay | maxaa < *maxay+baa | 'what' |
| ayo | yaa < *ayo+baa | 'who' |

Maxaa aad sawiraysaa? 'What are you drawing?'

Baabuur baa aan sawiraya. 'I'm drawing a car.'

Waxa aan sawiraya baabuur. 'I'm drawing a car.'

Yaa aad aragtay? 'Who did you see?'

Hooyo baa aan arkay. 'I saw mother.'

Waxa aan arkay hooyo. 'I saw mother.'

Make a question with a question word that fits the focused words in the following answers.

1. Hooyadu cunto ayaa ay karinaysaa.

2. Aabbuuhu beerta ayaa uu falayaa.
3. Safiya waxa ay siddaa biyo.
4. Aamina waxa ay la socotaa Safiya.
5. Waxa ay tagayaan guriga.
6. Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga.
7. Waxa ay u socotaa guriga.
8. Waxa uu ku nool yahay magaalada Boosaaso.
9. Waxa aan dhigtaa fasalka 2aad.

1. Tone-marked texts

<https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455524>

1. Translations

Layliyo

Exercises

Övningar

Buuxi meelaha bannaan!

Fill in the empty places/spaces!

Fyll i de tomma platserna!

Fyll i luckorna!

arday

students

elever / studenter

dugsi

school

skola

beer

garden / farm

trädgård / jordbruk / odling

mundul

hut

hydda

nin

man

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| | man |
| galley | maize / corn |
| | majs |
| bisad | cat |
| | katt |
| calan | flag |
| | flagga |
| ilmo | child |
| | barn |
| wil | boy |
| | pojke |
| webi | river |
| | flood |
| naag | woman |
| | kvinna |
| libaax | lion |
| | lejon |
| maroodi | elephant |
| | elefant |
| Qor tirooyinka maqan! | Write the missing numbers! |
| | Skriv de saknade talen! |
| | Skriv de tal som saknas! |
| Ku qor erayada sawirrada hoostooda! | Write the words below the pictures! |
| | Skriv orden under bilderna! |
| Kee dheer? | (literally: Which one is long?) |
| | Which one is longer/the longest? |
| | Vilken är längst? |
| Kee gaaban? | (literally: Which one is short?) |
| | Which one is shorter/the shortest? |
| | Vilken är kortast? |
| Eraygee baa ku habboon sawirka? | Which word is suitable for the picture? |
| | Vilket ord passar till bilden? |
| Wax baa ka maqan. | (literally: Something is missing from it.) |
| | Something is missing. |
| | Någonting fattas. / En sak fattas. |

Dhammaystir sawirka!

Complete the picture!

Gör färdig bilden! / Avsluta bilden!

Mid baa ka duwan.

(literally: One is different from them.)

One is different.

En är annorlunda.

Ku sawir "X"!

Draw an "X" on it!

Draw an X there.

Rita ett X på/vid den!

Rita ett X där!

'ku' expresses location at a place that has to be found by going back in the context, so it's most probably the 'mid - one' in the preceding sentence. So the X should go in/on/at/by/with that thing. Maybe: Mark it with an X - would be the most idiomatic.

Another possibility when Somali has a “stranded” preposition without corresponding noun, one can often translate ku as there.

Maxaa ka duwan?

What is different?

Vad är annorlunda?

Ku sawir "X"!

Write an X on it!

Rita ett X på/vid den!

See comment 10 above.

Eraygee baa ku habboon sawirka?

Which word is suitable for the picture?

Vilket ord är lämpligt/passande för bilden?

Vilket ord passar bilden?

Xarriiq hoos mari!

Draw a line under it!

Dra ett streck under det!

Tani ma Aaminaa?

Kani ma Axmed baa? – Maya.

Is this Ahmed? – No.

Är detta Ahmed? – Nej.

Tani ma Aaminaa? – Maya.

Is this Amina? – No.

Är detta Amina? – Nej.

Notice that Aaminaa < Aamina + baa, hence the long vowel is not part of the name. This kind of contraction with women's names ending in -a/-o + baa/ayaa is obligatory. Cf. 18, 20, 23 below.

Kani ma Cumar baa? – Maya.

Is this Omar? – No.

Är detta Omar? – Nej.

Tani ma Safiyaa? – Maya.

Is this Safia? – No.

Är detta Safia? – Nej.

Applies also to sentences 20, 23: The long -aa is due to the focus particle baa which always merges with female names ending in -a/-o. Such long vowels are part of Somali grammar and should of course not be included in the translation into other languages.

Kani ma Cali baa? – Haa.

Is this Ali? – Yes.

Är detta Ali? – Ja.

Tani ma Sahraa? – Haa.

Is this Sahra? – Yes.

Är detta Sahra? – Ja.

See comment 18.

Kani ma Cumar baa?

Is this Omar?

Är detta Omar?

Maya. Kani waa Axmed.

No. This is Ahmed.

Nej. Detta är Ahmed.

Tani ma Sahraa?

Is this Sahra?

Är detta Sahra?

See comment 18.

Maya. Tani waa Safiya.

No. This is Safia.

Nej. Detta är Safia.

Waa immisadii?

(literally: How much is it?)

What time is it?

Hur mycket är den?

Hur mycket är klockan?

Waa shantii.

(literally: It is five.)

It is five o'clock.

Den är fem.

Waa sagaalkii.

It is nine o'clock.

Den är nio.

Waa kowdii.

It is one o'clock.

Den är ett.

Waa saddexdii iyo badhkii.

(literally: It is three and the half.)

It is half past three.

Den är halv fyra.

Waa toddobadii iyo badhkii.

It is half past seven.

Den är halv åtta.

Faadumo, Xasan iyo Caasho.

Faduma, Hassan and Asha.

Faduma, Hassan och Asha.

Magacaygu waa Faadumo.

My name is Faduma.

Mitt namn är Faduma.

Jag heter Faduma.

Aabbahay magaciisu waa Maxamed.

My father's name is Mahamed.

Min fars namn är Mahamed.

Min pappa heter Mahamed.

Hooyaday magaceedu waa Aamina.

My mother's name is Amina.

Min mors namn är Amina.

Min mamma heter Amina.

Waxa aan leeyahay hal walaal.

I have one brother.

Jag har EN bror.

Magaciisu waa Xasan.

His name is Hassan.

Hans namn är Hassan.

Han heter Hassan.

Waxa aan leeyahay laba gabdhood oo walaalahay ah.

(literally: I have two girls who are my siblings.)

I have two sisters.

Jag har två systrar.

Since Somali doesn't have specific plural like brothers, sisters but only walaalo siblings, this is a way to be more specific. A literal translation should be avoided since it probably would have a quite confusing effect.

Magacyadoo du waa Xaawo iyo Caasho.

Their names are Hawa and Asha.

Deras namn är Hawa och Asha.

De heter Hawa och Asha.

Maxaa aad leedahay adigu?

(literatlltly: What do YOU have?)

How many siblings do you have?

Hur många syskon har du?

Qor qoraal gaaban oo ku saabsan qoyskaaga.

Write a short text about your family.

Skriv en kort text om din familj.

Kani waa Xasan.

This is Hassan.

Detta är Hassan.

Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

He goes to Sheekh Bashiir primary school.

Han går i Schejk Bashirs lågstadieskola.

Isagu waa fasalka 3aad (saddexaad).

He is in third grade.

Han går i tredje klass.

Of course, fasalka may also mean classroom, but in this context, it is more probable that reference is made to the third grade.

Dugsiga waxa uu u qaataa shaati buluug ah iyo surwaal midabka dambaska leh.

For school he puts on a blue shirt and grey trousers.

Till skolan tar han på sig en blå skjorta och grå byxor.

Magaca macallinkiisu waa Cabdi.

His teacher's name is Abdi.

Hans lärares namn är Abdi.

Hans lärare heter Abdi.

Weydiimo:

Questions:

Frågor:

Ka jawaab weydiimahan

(literally: Answer (Give an answer) from these questions.)

Answer these questions.

Besvara dessa frågor.

Svara på dessa frågor.

Xasan waa fasalkee?

Which grade is Hassan in?

Vilken klass går Hassan i?

Dharka dugsiga ee Xasan waa midabkee?

What colour are Hassan's school clothes?

Vilken färg är (det på) Hassans skolkläder?

Macallinka af-Soomaaliga ee Xasan magaciis?

What is the name of Hassan's Somali language teacher?

Vad heter Hassans lärare i somaliska?

Macallinkaaga af-Soomaaligu magaciis?

What is the name of your Somali language teacher?

Vad heter din lärare i somaliska?

Magacaygu waa Caasho.

My name is Asha.

Mitt namn är Asha.

Jag heter Asha

Waxa aan aadaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

I go to Sheekh Bashiir primary school.

Jag går i Schejk Bashirs lågstadieskola.

Waxa aan dhigtaa fasalka 2aad (labaad).

I study in second grade.

Jag går i andra klass.

Waxa aan dugsiga u qaataa jilbaab hurdi ah iyo cambuur buluug ah.

For school I put on a yellow veil and a blue dress.

Till skolan tar jag på mig en gul slöja och en blå klänning/tunika.

Geeddi gurigooda

Kani waa Geeddi gurigooda.

This is Gedi's house.

Detta är Gedis hus.

Geeddi qoyskoodu waa reer guuraa.

Gedi's family are nomads.

Gedis familj är nomader.

Reer guuraagu kolba meel bay u guuraan.

(literally: The nomads all the time move to some place.)

The nomads constantly move somewhere.

Nomader(na) flyttar ständigt någonstans.

Guryaha reer guuraaga si fudud baa loo dhisi karaa.

(literally: One can build the nomad houses in an easy manner.)

The houses of nomads can easily be built.

The nomad houses are easy to build.

Nomadernas hus kan man lätt bygga.

Det är lätt att bygga nomadhus.

Sawir guriga reer guuraaga iyo arigii oo xeraysan.

Draw the house of the nomads and the penned in sheep and goats.

Rita nomadernas hus och de ingårdade getterna och fåren.

25.2

– Magacaa?

What is your name?

Vad heter du?

– Waa Yuunis magacaygu.

My name is Yunis.

Jag heter Yunis.

– Xaggee baa aad ku dhalatay?

Where were you born?

Var är du född?

– Muqdisho baa aan ku dhashay.

I was born in Mogadishu.

Jag är född i Mogadishu.

1. Solutions

1.1 Yes / No-Questions

1. Waxa aan leeyahay hal walaal.

WITHOUT FOCUS:

Walaal ma leedahay?
Ma leedahay walaal?
Miyaad leedahay walaal?

WITH FOCUS:

Ma walaal baa leedahay?
Ma walaal baad leedahay?
Ma waxaad leedahay hal walaal?

2. Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

YOU - WITHOUT FOCUS:

Ma aaddaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir?
Miyaad aaddaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir?

YOU - WITH FOCUS:

Ma dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir baad aaddaa?
Dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir miyaad aadaa?
Ma waxaad aaddaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

HE - WITHOUT FOCUS:

Ma aadaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir?
Miyuu aadaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir?

HE - WITH FOCUS:

Ma dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir buu aadaa?
Ma dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir ayuu aadaa?
Dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir miyuu aadaa?

3. Waxa aan dhigtaa fasalka 2aad (labaad).

NO FOCUS

Ma dhigataa fasalka labaad?
Miyaad dhigataa fasalka labaad?
Fasalka labaad ma dhigataa?

FOCUS:

Ma fasalka labaad baa(d) dhigataa?
Ma fasalka labaad buu dhigtaa?
Ma fasalka labaad baa dhigtaa?

4. Hooyo cunto ayaa ay karinaysaa.

Hooyo cunto ma karinaysaa?
Ma cunto bay karinaysaa hooyo?
Ma cunto ayay karinaysaa hooyo?
Cunto miyay karinaysaa hooyo?

1.2 Questions with TO BE

11. Magacaygu waa Faadumo.

Magacaagu ma Faadumaa? (*Faadumo baa)
Magacaagu Faadumo miyaa?
Faadumo ma magacaagaa?
Faadumo magacaaga miyaa?

12. Aabbahay magaciisu waa Maxamed.

Aabbahaa magaciisu ma Maxamed baa?
Aabbahaa magaciisu Maxamed miyaa?

Magaca aabbahaa Maxamed miyaa?
Magaca aabbahaa ma Maxamed baa?

13. Hooyaday magaceedu waa Aamina.

Hooyadaa magaceedu ma Aaminaa?
Hooyadaa magaceedu Aamina miyaa?

14. Magaca macallinkiisu waa Cabdi.

Magaca macallinkaagu Cabdi miyaa?
Magaca macallinkaagu ma Cabdi baa?

15. Geeddi qoyskoodu waa reer-guuraa.

Geeddi qoyskoodu ma reer-guuraa baa?
Geeddi qoyskoodu reer-guuraa miyaa?
Reer-guuraa miyaa Geeddi qoyskoodu?
Ma reer-guuraa baa Geeddi qoyskoodu?

1.3 Question word + TO BE

1. Hooyo cunto aaya ay karinaysaa.

Maxaa ay karinaysaa hooyo?
Maxay karinaysaa hooyo?
Hooyo maxaa ay karinaysaa?
Hooyo maxay karinaysaa?

2. Aabbuuhu beerta aaya uu falayaa.

Maxaa uu falayaa aabbuuhu?
Muxuu falayaa aabbuuhu?
Aabbuuhu maxaa uu falayaa?
Aabbuuhu muxuu falayaa?

3. Safiya waxa ay siddaa biyo.

Maxaa ay siddaa Safiya?

Maxay siddaa Safiya?

Safiya maxaa ay siddaa?

Safiya maxay siddaa?

4. Aamina waxa ay la socotaa Safiya.

Aamina yaa ay la socotaa?

Aamina yay la socotaa?

Yaa ay la socotaa Aamina?

Yay la socotaa Aamina?

5. Waxa ay tagayaan guriga.

Xaggee bay tagayaan?

Xaggay tagayaan?

6. Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga.

Xaggee buu aadaa?

Xagguu aadaa?

7. Waxa ay u socotaa guriga.

Xaggee bay u socotaa?

Xaggay u socotaa?

8. Waxa uu ku nool yahay magaalada Boosaaso.

Xaggee buu ku nool yahay?

Xagguu ku nool yahay?

9. Waxa aan dhigtaa fasalka 2aad.

Fasalkee baad dhigataa?

Fasalkeed dhigataa?

Cutubka labaad

Cutubka 2aad

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455525>

2.1 Jiir iyo bisad



Jiirku waxa uu ku nool yahay
meel u dhow guriga Faadumo.
Adigu ma arki kartaa?

jíir -ka rat, mouse | råtta, mus

meéł a place, somewhere | en plats,
någonstans
ú dhow close to | nära
árki inf. see | se
karaa, kartaa can | kan



Waxa uu galay baaldiga dhexdiisa.

galaa, gashaa enters | går in i
baaldi -ga bucket | hink, spann
dhex -da inside | insida
dhexdiisa, dhexdeeda inside it |
inuti den, det



Waxa uu galay miiska hoostiisa.

hoos -ta underside | undersida
hoostiisa, hoosteeda under
it | under den, det



Jiirku waxa uu dul fuulay miiska.

dul -sha surface | yta
dul + verb on top of, ovanpå
fuulaa climbs onto | klättrar upp på



Bisaddu waxa ay gaadysaa jiirka.

gaadaa, gaaddaa *ambushes. creeps up on | lurpassar*



Bisaddu waxa ay ku boodysaa miiska.

boodaa, booddaa *jumps, hoppar*



Jiirku waxa uu ka boodayaa miiska.



U fiirso. Waa maxay kani?

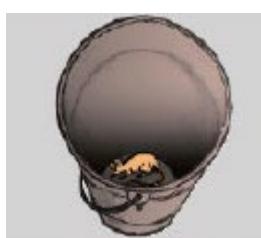
ú fiirso (imp.) *look at | titta på*



"Mee dabinkii jiirku? Bax,"
waxa tidhi hooyo.

mee? (< meeshee) *where is? | var
är?*
dabin -ka *trap | fälla*
bax! imp. *get out! | ut, försvinn!*
yidhi/yiri, tidhi/tiri *said | sa*

**Isku beeg sawirka iyo weedha
sawirka ka hadlaysa.**



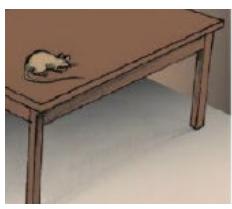
- **Jiirku waxa uu ku dhex jiraa baaldiga.**
- **Baaldigu waxa uu hoos yaal miiska.**
- **Gabadhu waxa ay u dhowdahay gambadhka.**
- **Wiilku waxa uu ku dul fadhiyaa sariirta.**



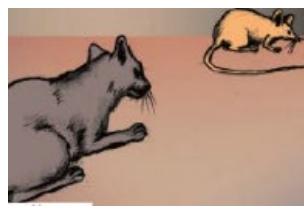
ku dhex



hoos



dul



u dhow

iskú together | ihop
beeg! imp. put! | för!
weédh^N -a / weér^S -ta clause,
sentence | sats, mening

ká hadlaa talks about | talar om,
säger ngt om ngt

ku dhex inside | inuti

hoos under

ú dhow close to | nära
gámbadh^N / gámbar^S -ka
(traditional Somali) stool |
(traditionell somalisk) pall
ku dul on (top of) | ovanpå

Qor haa ama maya.

1. Jiirku ma ku hoos jiraa miiska?
2. Jiirku ma ku dhex jiraa baaldiga?
3. Bisaddu ma miiska bay dul saaran
tahay?
4. Bisaddu ma u dhowdahay jiirka?

Sawir jiir kor saaran miis.

saarán adj. placed | placerad

kor = dul on top of | ovanpå

Sawir bisad ku hoos jirta gambahd.

jirta red. verb that is | som är, finns

Af-Soomaali 1, Hargeysa 2010: 47–54

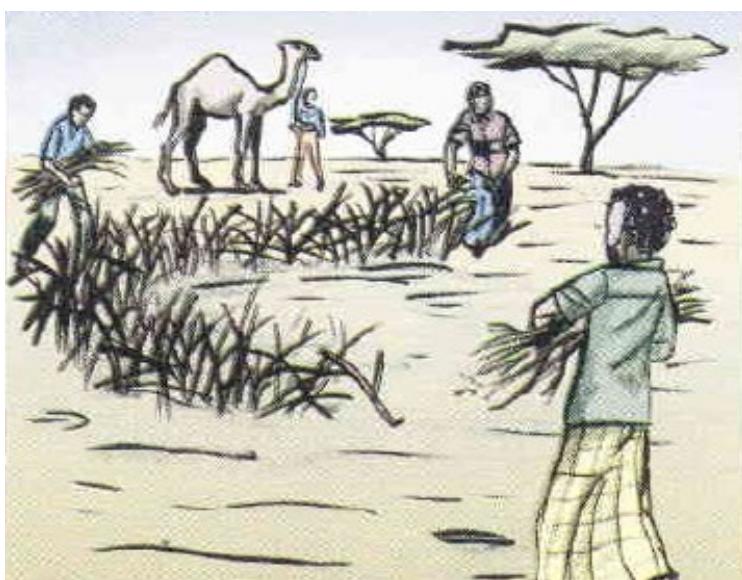
2.2 Dhisidda guri reer-guuraa (<1.9)



dhisíd -da *act of building, to build*
| byggande, att bygga

Weligaa ma aragtay reer-guuraa
dhisaya guri? U fiirso sawirrada.
Maxaa ay haweenku samaynayaan?
Maxaa ay raggu samaynayaan?

welí -ga *still* | *fortfarande*
welígaa *you ... ever* | *du ...*
någonsin, någon gång
haweén -ka (coll.) = dúmar -ka
women | *kvinnor*
rág -ga (coll.) *men* | *män*



Ma taqaannaa hees ay ku heesaan
reer-guuraagu marka ay guriga
dhisayaan? Ku hees heestaas.

taqaannaa (irreg.) *you know* | *du*
vet, du känner till
márka *when* (in subclause) | *när* (i
bistas)

Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 1aad, Muqdisho & Hargeysa 2001: 33–34

2.3 Alaabta lagu dhiso guriga reer-guuraaga



Eeg sawirkan guriga reer-guuraaga.
Waa maxay alaabta lagu dhisaa?
Marka hore dumarku waxa ay dhisaan
dhigaha iyo ubaha. Ka dibna waxa ay
guriga saaraan raro, kebed iyo saan.

Waxyabaha laga helo guriga reer-guuraaga

U sheeg fasalka waxa aad ku aragto sawirka.

lagú < *la+ku one ... with | man ...
med

kú dhisaa builds sth with sth |

bygger ngt med ngt

már -ka time | gång

horé (adj.) first, frontal | främst,
först

márka horé first (of all) | först

dúmar -ka (coll.) = **haweén -ka**
women | kvinnor

dhíg -ta, pl. **dhigó -ha** flexible pole
(part of hut-frame) | böjbar slana

údub -ka, pl. **udbó** pole (part of
hut-frame) | stolpe

saaraa puts | lägger, placerar

ráro -da (coll.) type of mats (used
on camel's back) | typ av
mattor (används på
kamelryggen)

kebéd -da type of mat (used on
camel's back) | typ av matta
(används på kamelryggen)

saán -ta hide, animal skin | djur-hud, skinn

lagá < *la+ka one ... from/of | man
... från/av

helaa, heshaa finds | hittar

shéeg (imp.) tell | berätta

wáx -a thing | sak; in subclauses
often: **wáxa** what | vad



Maxaa waxyaabahan loo adeegsadaa?

adeegsadaa, adeegsataa *uses* |
använder

**Waxyaabahan intee baa gurigiinna laga
helaa?**

intee? *how much?, how many?* |
hur mycket?, hur många?

**Ma taqaannaa waxa ay ka samaysan
yihiiin?**

Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 1aad, Muqdisho & Hargeysa 2001: 33–34

2.4 Wadahadallo 26-27

26.2

- Maxaad ka shaqaysaa?
- Karraani baan ahay.
- Ma Burco baad ku dhalatay?
- Maya. Wuxaan ku dhashay Berbera.

26.3

- Aamina, maxaad sheegtay?
- Nabad.
- Ma Hargeysa baad ku dhalatay?
- Haa. Hargeysa baan ku dhashay.

27.0

- Ma magaalo baad ku dhalatay mise miyi?
- Wuxaan ku dhashay magaalo.

27.1

- Caliyoow, maxaad qabataa?
- Macallin baan ahay.
- Ma magaalo baad ku dhalatay mise miyi?
- Wuxaan ku dhashay magaalo.

27.2

- Leyla, ma Burco baad ku dhalatay mise Hargeysa?
- Wuxuu ku dhashay Hargeysa.
- Saaxiibkaana?
- Wuxuu ku dhashay Marka.

27.3

- Iska warran, Cumar.
- Waa nabad.
- Ma miyi baad ku dhalatay mise magaalo?
- Wuxuu ku dhashay miyi.

Beginning in Somali (1966: 65–71)

2. Erayo cusub

No Quizlet available

| | | |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| adeegsadaa, adeegsataa | <i>uses</i> | <i>använder</i> |
| <u>dhíg</u> (f.), pl. dhigó | <i>flexible pole (part of hut-frame)</i> | <i>böjbar slana</i> |
| dhisíd (f.) | <i>act of building, to build</i> | <i>byggande, att bygga</i> |
| dúmar (m.coll.) = haweén | <i>women</i> | <i>kvinnor</i> |
| ú fiirso (imp.) | <i>look at</i> | <i>titta på</i> |
| fudúd (adj.) | <i>easy, light (not heavy)</i> | <i>lätt</i> |
| gúri (m.), pl. guryó | <i>house</i> | <i>hus</i> |
| guuraa, guurtaa | <i>moves</i> | <i>flyttar</i> |
| haweén (m.coll.) = dúmar | <i>women</i> | <i>kvinnor</i> |
| helaa, heshaa | <i>finds</i> | <i>hittar</i> |
| inteé? | <i>how much?, how many?</i> | <i>hur mycket?, hur många?</i> |
| kebéd (f.) | <i>type of mat (used on camel's back)</i> | <i>typ av matta (används på kamelryggen)</i> |
| kolba | <i>constantly, all the time</i> | <i>ständigt, hela tiden</i> |
| lagá < la + ka | <i>one ... from/of</i> | <i>man ... från/av</i> |
| lagú < la + ku | <i>one ... in</i> | <i>man ... in</i> |
| loó < la + u | <i>one ... to/for</i> | <i>man ... till/för/åt</i> |
| márka (connector) | <i>when (in subclause)</i> | <i>när (i bistas)</i> |
| rág (m.coll.) | <i>men</i> | <i>män</i> |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|--|---|
| ráro (f.coll.) | <i>type of mats (used on camel's back)</i> | <i>typ av mattor (använts på kamelryggen)</i> |
| saán (f.) | <i>hide, animal skin</i> | <i>djurhud, skinn</i> |
| shéeg (imp.) | <i>tell</i> | <i>berätta</i> |
| taqaannaa (irreg.v.) | <i>you know</i> | <i>du vet, du känner till</i> |
| údub (m.), pl. udbó | <i>pole (part of hut-frame)</i> | <i>stolpe</i> |
| welí (m.) | <i>still</i> | <i>fortfarande</i> |
| welígaa | <i>you ... ever</i> | <i>du ... någonsin, någon gång</i> |
| xeraysán (adj.) | <i>penned, enclosed</i> | <i>instängd, inhägnad</i> |

2. Word formation

| | | | |
|--------------|--|------------------------|---------------------|
| reér | <i>(extended) family, group of relatives</i> | | |
| guur! | <i>move!</i> | | |
| -áá | <i>-er, doer</i> | reer-guuraá -ga | <i>coll. nomads</i> |
| qor! | <i>write!</i> | qoraá -ga | <i>writer</i> |
| -áá | <i>-er</i> | qóre -áha | <i>writer</i> |
| bar! | <i>teach!</i> | báre -áha | <i>teacher</i> |
| -e | <i>-er</i> | | |

2. Cultural notes

How to build a traditional *aqal Soomaali*. Listen for words like *udub*, *dhig* and *albaab/irrid*. <https://fb.watch/inToVXwMl-/>

2. Grammar in Focus

Stress or High tone

Somali stress is realised as a **high tone** (plus energy).

General rules:

→ There is normally at least one high tone in every phrase.

- There is often a final high tone at the end of phrases, except for the last phrase in a sentence.

Special rules:

- Simple aspect forms have no tone.

wúu akhriyaa, wáy akhrisaa *s/he writes*

- Progressive aspect forms have tone right before the progressive /ay/.

wuu akhrínayaa, way akhrínaysaa *s/he is writing*

- Imperative forms have tone on second last vowel position.

ákhri SG, **akhríya** PL *write*

- Particle phrases can have tone, but they don't have to.

wúu akhriyaa, wáy akhrisaa *s/he writes*

wuu akhrínayaa, way akhrínaysaa *s/he is writing*

- Prepositions are stressed.

- Adjectives in verb phrases are always stressed.

- Adjectives in noun phrases are often not stressed.

- A “bare” noun as modifier in an NP is often not stressed.

labá maalmood *two days*

- Interrogative -ee has final high tone.

inteé, xaggeé, meesheeé, halkeeé

- Nouns always have tone if followed by a determiner or modifier.

- A focused NP always has a tone.

- A subject NP has no tone on the last “element”.

2. Layliyo

Online: [2.1 The clock](#)

2.2 Translate into Somali

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Where was he born? | Var är han född? |
| He was born in Berbera. | Han är född i Berbera. |
| Where were you born? | Var är du född? |
| I was born in Berbera. | Jag är född i Berbera. |
| Where was he born? | Var är han född? |
| He was born in Hargeysa. | Han är född i Hargeysa. |
| Where were you born? | Var är du född? |
| I was born in Hargeisa. | Jag är född i Hargeisa. |
| Where was he born? | Var är han född? |
| He was born in Mogadishu. | Han är född i Mogadishu. |
| Where were you born? | Var är du född? |
| I was born in Mogadishu. | Jag är född i Mogadishu. |
| Where was he born? | Var är han född? |
| He was born in Burao. | Han är född i Burao. |
| Where were you born? | Var är du född? |
| I was born in Burao. | Jag är född i Burao. |
| Where was he born? | Var är han född? |
| He was born in Barawa. | Han är född i Brava. |
| Where were you born? | Var är du född? |
| I was born in Barawa. | Jag är född i Brava. |
| Where was he born? | Var är han född? |
| He was born in Erigavo. | Han är född i Erigabo. |
| Where were you born? | Var är du född? |
| I was born in Erigavo. | Jag är född i Erigabo. |

2. Translations

Jiir iyo bisad

A mouse/rat and a cat

En mus/råtta och en katt

Jiirku waxa uu ku nool yahay meel u dhow guriga Faadumo.

The mouse/rat lives close to Faadumo's home.

Musen lever på en plats nära Fadumas hus.

Råttan bor i närheten av Fadumas hem.

Adigu ma arki kartaa?

Can you see it?

Kan du se den?

The question is most probably whether you can see the mouse/rat, since the main character of the preceding sentence was the mouse. But Somali doesn't have any object pronoun corresponding to 'it / den'. This fact has to be understood from the general context in Somali.

Waxa uu galay baaldiga dhexdiisa.

It went into the bucket.

Den har gått in i / ner i hinken.

Waxa uu galay miiska hoostiisa.

It went under the table.

Den har gått in under bordet.

Bogga 48

Page 48

Sidan 48

Jiirku waxa uu dul fuulay miiska.

The mouse/rat climbed on top of the table.

Råttan/musen har klättrat upp på bordet(s yta).

Bisaddu waxa ay gaadysaa jiirka.

The cat is creeping up on the mouse.

Katten lurpassar på musen/råttan.

gaadaa - creep up on, stalk, ambush, attack suddenly or unexpectedly
smyga sig på, sitta på lurpass/i bakhåll, anfalla plötsligt och oväntat
different from

gaaraa/gaadhaa - arrives, reaches - när, kommer fram

Bisaddu waxa ay ku boodeysaa miiska

The cat is jumping onto the table.

Katten hoppar upp på bordet.

Jiirku waxa uu ka boodayaa miiska.

The mouse is jumping off the table.

Musen hoppar ner från bordet.

U firso.

Look (at it/them). / Have a good/close look at it/them.

Titta noga (på dem/det).

Waa maxay kani?

What is this?

Vad är detta?

Mee dabinkii jiirku?

Where is the mousetrap?

Var är musfällan/råttfällan?

"Bax," waxaa tidhi hooyo.

"Get out", said mother.

"Ut," sa mamma. / "Schas," sa mamma.

Bax is a verb, but in Swedish it is probably more natural to just say

Ut.

Isku beeg sawirka iyo weedha ka hadlaysa.

Fit together / Match the picture and the sentence that says something about it.

Passa samman bilden och meningens som säger något om den.

För samman bilden och meningens som handlar om den.

is each other, ku to, beeg fit, align

Jiirku waxa uu ku dhex jiraa baaldiga.

The mouse is inside the bucket.

Musen / råttan befinner sig inuti hinken / spannen.

Baaldigu waxa uu hoos yaal miiska.

The bucket is under the table.

Hinken står under bordet.

Gabadhu waxa ay u dhow dahay gambahka.

The girl is close to the stool.

Flickan är nära pallen.

Wiilku waxa uu ku dul fadhiyaa sariirta.

The boy is sitting on top of the bed.

Pojken sitter ovanpå sängen.

ku dhex jira

being inside of X

befinner sig inuti

hoos

underside

undersida

dul

top, surface

ovansida

u dhow

close to

nära

Qor haa ama maya.

Write yes or no.

Skriv ja eller nej.

Jiirku ma ku hoos jiraa miiska?

Is the mouse under the table?

Är musen/råttan under bordet?

Jiirku ma ku dhex jiraa baaldiga?

Is the mouse inside the bucket?

Befinner sig musen/råttan inuti hinken/spannen?

Bisaddu ma miiskey dul saaran tahay?

Is the cat sitting on the table? (lit. Is the cat placed on the surface of the table?)

Sitter katten ovanpå bordet? (eg. Är katten placerad på bordets yta?)

Bisaddu ma u dhowdahay jiirka?

Is the cat close to the mouse/rat?

Är katten nära musen/råttan?

tahay is affected by a preceding adjective in the same way as the definite article **-ta**. In such cases when the consonant is altered, the verb and the adjective are written together as one word.

Sawir jiir kor saaran miis.

Draw a mouse (placed) on top of a table.

Rita en mus/råtta (placerad) ovanpå ett bord.

Sawir bisad ku hoos jirta gambahd.

Draw a cat (which is) under a stool.

Rita en katt (som befinner sig) under en pall.

Since Somali prepositions need to be followed by a verb or an adjective, you can't join to nouns using a preposition like you can in English or Swedish. There has to be a verb or an adjective involved in Somali. Such verbs or adjectives can often be omitted when translating into English or

Swedish from Somali. And of course, when translating into Somali they have to be added.

jiir kor **saaran** miis
a mouse on a table
en mus på ett bord
bisad ku hoos **jirta** gambah
a cat under a stool
en katt under en pall

Dhisidda guri reer guuraa

(literally: The building of a house of nomads)

To build a nomad house

Byggandet av ett nomadhus.

Att bygga ett nomadhus.

Weligaa ma aragtay reer guuraa dhisaya guri?

Have you ever seen nomads building a house?

Har du någonsin sett nomader bygga/som bygger ett hus?

U firso sawirrada.

Look at the pictures.

Titta på bilderna.

Maxaa ay haweenku samaynayaan?

What are the women doing?

Vad gör kvinnorna?

Maxaa ay raggu samaynayaan?

What are the men doing?

Vad gör männen?

Ma taqaannaa hees ay ku heesaan reer guuraagu marka ay guriga dhisayaan?

Do you know a song the nomads sing when they are building the house?

Känner du till en sång som nomaderna sjunger när de bygger huset/sitt hus?

Ku hees heestaas.

Sing that song.

Sjung den sången.

Alaabta lagu dhiso guriga reer guuraaga

The materials with which one builds the nomad house

Saker(na) man bygger nomadernas hus med

Eeg sawirkan guriga reer guuraaga.

Look at this picture of the house of the nomads.

Titta på den här bilden av nomadernas hus.

Waa maxay alaabta lagu dhisaa?

What are the things one builds it with?

Vad är (det för) saker man bygger det med?

Marka hore dumarku waxa ay dhisaan dhigaha iyo udbaha.

First the the women build the flexible poles and the supporting poles.

Först bygger kvinnorna slanor och pålar..

Ka dibna waxa ay guriga saaraan raro, kebed iyo saan.

Then they put mats, rug(s) and hide(s) on the house.

Sedan lägger de på mattor, mattor och djurhud på huset.

Waxyabaha laga helo guriga reer guuraaga

(The) things that are found in the house of nomads

(Generic definite form)

Saker(na) man hittar i nomadernas hus

U sheeg fasalka waxa aad ku aragto sawirka.

Tell the class the thing(s) you see in the picture.

Tell the class what you see in the picture.

Berätta för klassen sakerna du ser på bilden.

Berätta för klassen vad du ser på bilden.

Maxaa waxyabahan loo adeegsadaa?

What does one use these things for?

What are these things used for?

Vad använder man de här sakerna till?

loo < la + u ‘one + for’

Waxyabahan intee baa gurigiinna laga helaa?

How many of these things does one find in your home?

How many of these things are found in your home?

Hur många av de här sakerna hittar man i ert hus?

Ma taqaannaa waxa ay ka samaysan yihiin?

Do you know the thing(s) they are made of?

Do you know what they are made of?

(Vet du sakerna de är gjorda av?)

Vet du vad de är gjorda av?

26.2

– Maxaa aad ka shaqeysaa?

What work do you do?

Vad arbetar du med?

– Karraani baa aan ahay.

I am a clerk.

Jag är tjänsteman/kontorsanställd.

– Ma Burco baa aad ku dhalatay?

Were you born in Burao?

Är du född i Burao?

– Maya. Waxa aan ku dhashay Berbera.

No. I was born in Berbera.

Nej, jag är född i Berbera.

27.1

– Caliyoow, maxaad qabataa?

Ali, what work do you do?

Ali, vad arbetar du med?

– Macallin baa aan ahay.

I am a teacher.

Jag är lärare.

– Ma magaalo baa aad ku dhalatay mise miyi?

Were you born in a city or in the countryside?

Är du född i stan eller på landet?

– Waxa aan ku dhashay magaalo.

I was born in a city.

Jag är född i stan.

27.2

– Leyla, ma Burco baa aad ku dhalatay mise Hargeysa?

Leyla, were you born in Burao or Hargeisa?

Leyla, är du född i Burao eller Hargeysa?

– Waxa aan ku dhashay Hargeysa.

I was born in Hargeisa.

Jag är född i Hargeysa.

– Saaxiibkaana?

And your friend?

Och din vän?

– Waxa uu ku dhashay Marka.

He was born in Merca.

Han är född i Marka.

2. Solutions

2.2 Translate into Somali

Xaggee baa uu ku dhashay?

Xaggee buu ku dhashay?

Xagguu ku dhashay?

Waxa uu ku dhashay Berbera.

Wuxuu ku dhashay Berbera.

... Hargeysa.

... Muqdisho.

... Burco.

... Baraawe.

... Ceerigaabo.

Xaggee baa aad ku dhalatay?

Xaggee baad ku dhalatay?

Xaggeed ku dhalatay?

Waxa aan ku dhashay Berbera.

Waxaan ku dhashay Berbera.

... Hargeysa.

... Muqdisho.

... Burco.

... Baraawe.

... Ceerigaabo.

Cutubka saddexaad

Cutubka 3aad

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/435651>

3.1 Guryo magaalo

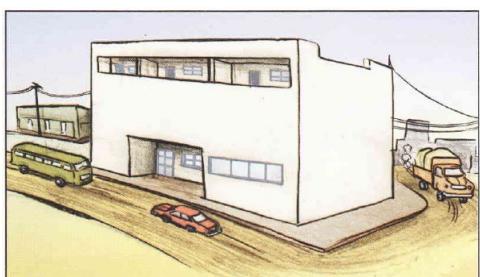


Kani waa Rooble gurigooda.

Waxa uu ku yaallaa magaalo.

Gurigiinnu ma yahay sida Rooble gurigooda?

Sawir gurigiinna.



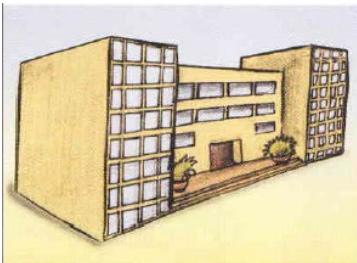
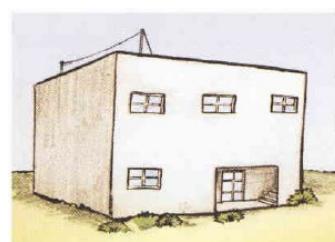
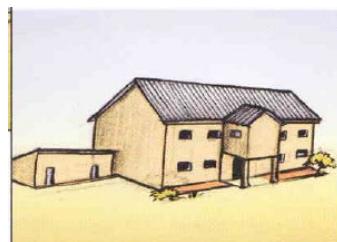
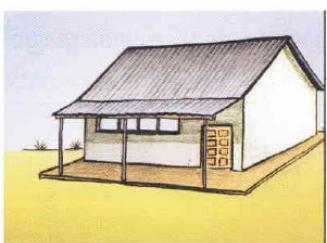
Kani waa guri magaalo.

Dad badan baa ku nool magaalooinka.

Iyagu waxa ay ku nool yihii guryaha magaalada.

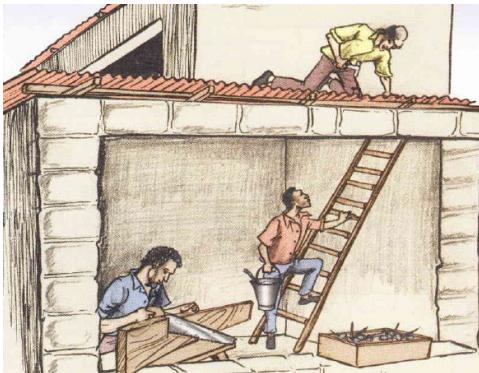
Adigu ma ku nooshay guri magaalo?

Eeg sawirka. Maxaa aad ku aragtaa?



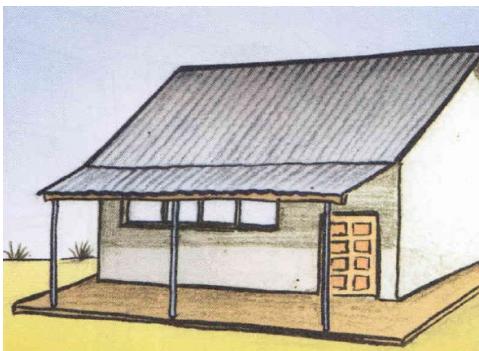
Kuwani waa guryo magaalo.

Dadka magaaladu waxa ay ku nool yihii guryo kala duwan.



Dadkani waxa ay dhisayaan guri magaalo.

Waa maxay alaabta uu ka samaysan
yahay guri magaalo?



Gidaarrada gurigan waxa lagu dhisay
dhagax.

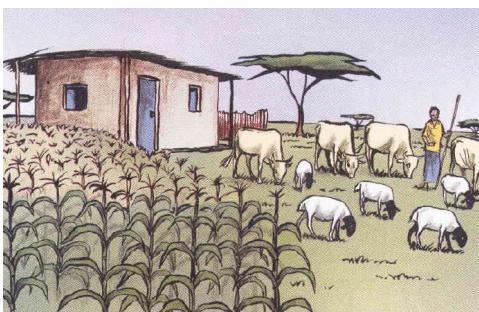
Saqafka waxa lagu sameeyay jiingado.

Albaabka waxa lagu sameeyay loox.

Daaqadaha waxa ku jira muraayado.

Cilmiga bulshada 1, Hargeysa 2001: 15–19

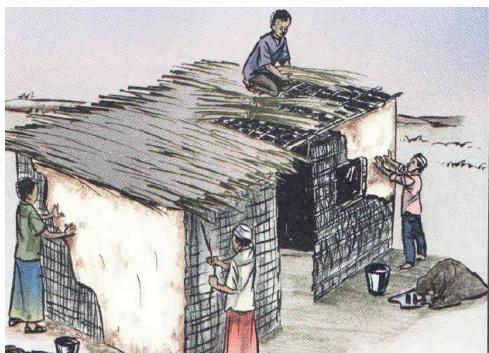
3.3 Hodan gurigooda



Kani waa Hodan gurigooda. Hodan qoyskoodu waxa uu ku nool yahay beer dhexdeed. Waxa uu qoysku ku nool yahay guriga beerta.

Idinku ma ku nooshihiin beer?
Maxaa ay dadku beerta ka qabtaan?
Sawir guri beeraley.

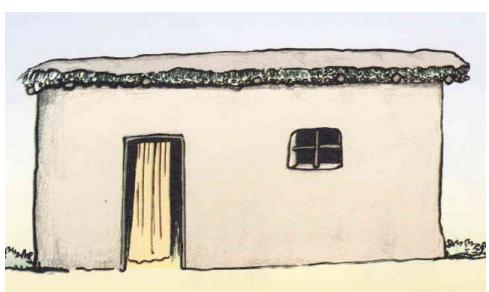
Dhisidda guri beeraley



Dadka ka muuqda sawirku waxa ay dhisayaan guri beeraley. Iyagu waa beeraley. Maxaa ay u adeegsadaan dhisidda guriga?

Ma taqaannaa hees la qaado marka la dhisayo guri beeraley?
Bal ku hees heestaa!

Alaabta loo adeegsado dhisidda guriga beerta



Eeg sawirkan guri beeraley. Waa maxay alaabta uu ka samaysan yahay?

Gidaarrada gurigan waxa lagu dhisay laamo iyo dhoobo. Saqafka waxa lagu daboolay laamo iyo caws. Albaabka waxa lagu sameeyay loox. Daaqaddu aad ayey u yar tahay. Daaqaddu ma laha muraayad.

Nadiifinta guri beeraley



Kani waa guri beeraley oo nadiif ah.
Hooyadu waxa ay qashinka ku ridaysaa god laga qoday bannaanka.
Godku waa uu ka baxsan yahay guriga.
Magacow walxaha ka muuqda sawirka.

Cilmiga Bulshada, Muqdisho & Hargeysa 2001: 26–29

3.3 Maxaa ay samaynayaan?



Sahra waxa ay samayn kartaa
waxyaabo badan.

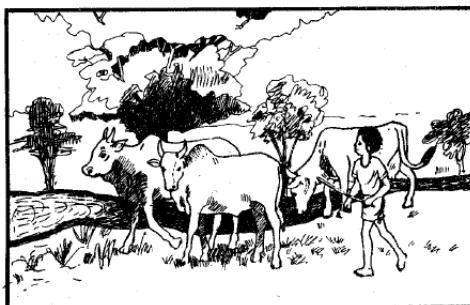
Waxa ay quudinaysaa digaagga.

Waxa ay u daadinaysaa galley.

Axmed lo' buu waraabinayaa.

Waxa uu ka keenay meel fog.

Waa uu daallan yahay.



Safiya waxa ay siddaa biyo.

Aamina waxa ay la socotaa Safiya.

Waxa ay tagayaan guriga.



Kuwani waa waalidkii carruurta.

Hooyadu cunto ayey karinaysaa.

Aabbuhu beerta ayuu falayaa.



Af Soomaali 2, 1994: 129-137

3.4 Wadahadallo 28-29

28.0

- Xaggee buu ku dhashay?
- Wuxuu ku dhashay Berbera.

28.1

- Ma nabad baa?
- Nabad.
- Saciid xaggee buu ku dhashay?
- Wuxuu ku dhashay Boorama.

Bóorama / Bóorame Borama

28.2

- Ninkaasi waa kuma?
- Waa Kaahin.
- Xaggee buu ku dhashay?
- Wuxuu ku dhashay Muqdisho.

28.3

- Ma macallin baad tahay?
- Haa, macallin baan ahay.
- Xaggee baad ku dhalatay?
- Marka baan ku dhashay.

29.0

- Ma waxay ku dhalatay magaalo mise baadiye?
- Waxay ku dhalatay magaalo.

waxay = waxa ay

baadíye -ha (Ar.) = miyi -ga
countryside | landsbygd

29.1

- Xaliimo ma waxay ku dhalatay magaalo mise baadiye?
- Waxay ku dhalatay baadiye.
- Ma karraaniyad baa?
- Maya. Waa macallimad.

Beginning in Somali (1966: 75–78)

3. Erayo cusub

Quizlet 2.03, Somali-English: <https://quizlet.com/520638516/>

Quizlet 2.03, somaliska-svenska: <https://quizlet.com/520638882/>

| | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| alaáb -ta (coll.) | <i>stuff, things, materials</i> | <i>saker, material</i> |
| arkaa, aragtaa | <i>sees</i> | <i>ser</i> |
| daadínayaa | <i>is pouring out, is spilling</i> | <i>strör, häller, spiller</i> |
| dhágax -a | <i>stone</i> | <i>sten</i> |
| dhísayaa | <i>is building</i> | <i>bygger</i> |
| éeg (imp.) | <i>look!</i> | <i>titta</i> |
| eégayaa | <i>is looking</i> | <i>tittar</i> |
| fóg (adj.) | <i>distant</i> | <i>avlägsen</i> |
| gálley / galléy -da | <i>maize</i> | <i>majs</i> |
| gidáar -ka (Ar.) | <i>wall</i> | <i>vägg</i> |
| jiingád -da | <i>corrugated metal sheet</i> | <i>korrugerad plåt</i> |
| kala duwán (adj.) | <i>different, different kinds of</i> | <i>olika, olika slags</i> |
| karaa, kartaa | <i>can, is able to</i> | <i>kan</i> |
| keenaa, keentaa | <i>brings</i> | <i>för, har med sig, kommer med ngt</i> |
| <hr/> | | |
| lóox -a (coll.) | <i>planks, timber, wood</i> | <i>bräddor, plankor</i> |
| magaálo -áda | <i>town, city</i> | <i>stad</i> |
| muraayád -da (Ar.) | <i>pane, mirror, eyeglasses</i> | <i>glas(ruta), spegel, glasögon</i> |
| quudínayaa | <i>feeds, nourishes</i> | <i>matar</i> |
| [ká] samaysán (adj.) | <i>made [of]</i> | <i>gjord [av]</i> |
| sáqaf -ka (Ar.) | <i>roof, ceiling</i> | <i>tak</i> |
| sída | <i>the manner; like (comparing)</i> | <i>sättet; som (vid jämförelse)</i> |
| <hr/> | | |
| sidaa, siddaa | <i>carries</i> | <i>bär, för, har med sig</i> |
| waálid -ka | <i>a pair of parents</i> | <i>föräldrapar</i> |
| waxyaabó IRREGULAR PL. | <i>things</i> | <i>saker</i> |
| <hr/> | | |
| adeegsadaa, adeegsataa | <i>uses</i> | <i>använder</i> |
| arkaa, aragtaa | <i>sees</i> | <i>ser</i> |
| ayay = ayaa ay | | |
| aynu | <i>we</i> | <i>vi</i> |
| ayuu = ayaa uu | | |
| bal | <i>just, now, simply</i> | <i>då, nu, bara</i> |
| bannáan -ka | <i>outside</i> | <i>utomhus</i> |
| ká baxsán | <i>away, at a distance</i> | <i>avsidet, belägen en bit bort</i> |
| bay = baa ay | | |
| beeraléy -da (coll.) | <i>farmers</i> | <i>bönder, jordbrukare</i> |
| birjíko -áda | <i>cooker</i> | <i>kokplatta</i> |

| | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| biyó -áha | <i>water</i> | <i>vatten</i> |
| buu = baa uu | | |
| cáws -ka | <i>straw</i> | <i>gräs, halm</i> |
| dáah -a | <i>curtain</i> | <i>gardin</i> |
| daboolaa, dabooshaa | <i>covers</i> | <i>täcker</i> |
| dád -ka (coll.) | <i>people</i> | <i>folk</i> |
| dérmo -áda | <i>mat</i> | <i>matta</i> |
| dhéx -da | <i>middle</i> | <i>mitt</i> |
| dhéxdiiisa, dhéxdeeda | <i>in the middle of, inside</i> | <i>mitt i, inuti</i> |
| dhisíd -da | <i>building, to build</i> | <i>byggande, att bygga</i> |
| dhoóbo -áda | <i>clay</i> | <i>lera</i> |
| dhuxúl -sha | <i>charcoal</i> | <i>kol</i> |
| dibéd -da | <i>outside, abroad</i> | <i>utomhus, utomlands</i> |
| duwán | <i>different</i> | <i>annorlunda</i> |
| fádhí -ga | <i>sofa, armchair</i> | <i>soffa, fåtölj</i> |
| qólka fádhiga | <i>living room, sitting room</i> | <i>vardagsrum</i> |
| fariistaa, fariisataa | <i>sits</i> | <i>sitter, sätter sig</i> |
| girgíre -áha | <i>charcoal stove</i> | <i>koleldad kokplatta</i> |
| góð -ka | <i>burrow, hole</i> | <i>grop, hål</i> |
| goormá? | <i>what time?, when?</i> | <i>vilken tid?, när?</i> |
| guraa, gurtaa | <i>collects</i> | <i>samlar ihop</i> |
| halkeé? | <i>wha tplace?, where?</i> | <i>vilken plats?, var?</i> |
| helaa, heshaa | <i>finds, gets</i> | <i>hittar, får</i> |
| húrdo -áda | <i>sleep</i> | <i>sömn</i> |
| idínka | <i>you (pl.)</i> | <i>ni</i> |
| iyága | <i>they</i> | <i>de</i> |
| kala | <i>apart, from each other</i> | <i>från varandra, isär</i> |
| karsadaa, karsataa | <i>cooks</i> | <i>lagar, kokar</i> |
| korónто -áda | <i>current, electricity</i> | <i>ström, el</i> |
| kuna < ku + na | | |
| kuraás -ta (coll.) | <i>chairs</i> | <i>stolar</i> |
| laán -ta, PL. laamó | <i>branch</i> | <i>gren</i> |
| lagá < la + ká | | |
| lagú < la + kú | | |
| loó < la + ú | | |
| má laha | <i>doesn't have</i> | <i>har inte</i> |
| mádbakh -a | <i>kitchen</i> | <i>kök</i> |
| magaców (IMPERATIVE) | <i>tell, say the name</i> | <i>näm, namnge</i> |
| makiinád -da | <i>stove</i> | <i>spis</i> |
| márka (SUBORDINATOR) | <i>when</i> | <i>när</i> |
| míd -ka/-da | <i>one</i> | <i>en</i> |
| mise | <i>or</i> | <i>eller</i> |
| muuqdaa, muuqataa | <i>shows itself, can be seen</i> | <i>syns, visar sig</i> |

| | | |
|---|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| nadiifín -ta | <i>cleaning, to clean</i> | <i>rengörning, städning, städa</i> |
| nóoshahay < nool+tahay | <i>she lives, you live</i> | <i>hon, du lever, bor</i> |
| nóoshihiin < nool+tihiin | <i>you live</i> | <i>ni lever, bor</i> |
| qaadaa, qaaddaa | <i>takes; here: sings</i> | <i>tar; här: sjunger</i> |
| qáar -ka | <i>part</i> | <i>del</i> |
| qabtaa, qabataa | <i>takes, gets</i> | <i>tar, får</i> |
| qashin^S -ka = xashiish ^N | <i>litter, trash, garbage</i> | <i>skräp</i> |
| qodaa, qoddaa | <i>digs</i> | <i>gräver</i> |
| qol -ka, PL. qolál -ka | <i>room</i> | <i>rum</i> |
| qolka hurdada | <i>bedroom</i> | <i>sovrum</i> |
| qurxín -ta | <i>decoration</i> | <i>utsmyckning</i> |
| qurxiyaa, qurxisaa | <i>decorates</i> | <i>utsmyckar</i> |
| ridaa, riddaa | <i>throws, puts</i> | <i>kastar, lägger</i> |
| sabáb -ta | <i>reason</i> | <i>orsak</i> |
| sheegaa, sheegtaa | <i>tells, says</i> | <i>berättar, säger</i> |
| sideé? | <i>which manner?, how?</i> | <i>vilket sätt?, hur?</i> |
| sudhaa, sudhaa | | |
| / suraa, surtaa | <i>hangs (something)</i> | <i>hänger (något)</i> |
| taqaannaa | <i>you know</i> | <i>du känner till</i> |
| téneg -ga | <i>tank, container</i> | <i>tank, behållare</i> |
| ugú < ú + kú | | |
| waláx -da, PL. walxó -áha | <i>thing, object, item</i> | <i>ting, föremål</i> |
| waraabiyyaa, waraabisa | <i>waters</i> | <i>vattnar</i> |
| waxqábad -ka | <i>activity</i> | <i>aktivitet</i> |
| xaábo -áda | <i>firewood</i> | <i>ved</i> |
| xashiish^N -ka = qashin ^S | <i>garbage</i> | <i>skräp</i> |

3. Word formation

x

3. Grammar in focus

In this lesson the plural forms of nouns are introduced and the various verb forms are reviewed. The referential demonstrative suffix **-kii/-tii** is also discussed.

I den här lektionen introduceras substantivens pluralformer. Verbens former repreteras och det referentiella demonstrativa suffixet **-kii/-tii** tas upp.

Plural forms of nouns

If the singular ends in **-o**, then the plural ends in **-oýin**. and the definite form ends in **-oýinka**.

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| magaálo | (a) town, city (en) stad |
| magaaláda | the town, city staden |
| magaaloýin | towns, cities städer |
| magaaloýinka | the towns, cities städerna |

If the singular ends in **-e**, then the plural ends in **-ayaál** and the definite form ends in **-ayaásha**.

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| báre | (a) teacher (en) lärare |
| baráha | the teacher läraren |
| barayaál | teachers lärare |
| barayaásha | the teachers lärarna |

Masculine nouns with only one vowel add an **-a-** and then the final consonant of the word. The definite article is the same in the plural as in the singular. This kind of plural is called reduplication.

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| míis | (a) table (ett) bord |
| míiska | the table bordet |
| miisás | tables bord |
| miisáska | the tables borden |

All other feminine nouns take the plural eding **-ó** and the definite form ends in **-áha**.

Maskulina substantiv med bara en vokal lägger till ett **-a-** och sedan den sista konsonanten i ordet. Bestämd artikel i plural är densamma som i singular. Denna typ av plural kallas reduplikation.

Alla andra feminina substantiv får pluraländelsen **-ó** och den bestämda formen slutar på **-áha**.

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| bisád | (a) <i>cat</i> (<i>en</i>) <i>katt</i> |
| bisádda | <i>the cat</i> <i>katten</i> |
| bisadó | (a) <i>cat</i> (<i>en</i>) <i>katt</i> |
| bisadáha | <i>the cat</i> <i>katten</i> |

Other masculine nouns take the plural ending **-yó** and the definite form ends in **-yáda**.

| | |
|------------------|--|
| mágac | (a) <i>name</i> (<i>ett</i>) <i>namn</i> |
| mágaca | <i>the name</i> <i>namnet</i> |
| magacyó | <i>names</i> <i>namn</i> |
| magacyáda | <i>the names</i> <i>namnen</i> |

But if the word ends in **b, d, l, n, r**, the **-y-** is replaced by a doubling of the word final consonant in most words.

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| gidáar | (a) <i>wall</i> (<i>en</i>) <i>vägg, mur</i> |
| gidáarka | <i>the wall</i> <i>väggen, muren</i> |
| gidaarró | <i>walls</i> <i>väggar, murar</i> |
| gidaarráda | <i>the walls</i> <i>väggarna, murarna</i> |

A few words are a bit irregular.

Ett par ord uppvisar små oregelbundenheter.

| | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| gúri, gúriga | pl. guryó, guryáha | <i>houses</i> <i>hus</i> |
| wáx, wáxa | pl. waxyaabó, waxyaabáha | <i>things</i> <i>saker</i> |

Tenses and Moods, a summary

| 3 RD PERSON SINGULAR | | MASCULINE | FEMININE | |
|---------------------------------|-----------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| PRESENT | -aa | heesaa heesayaa | heestaa heesaysaa | 'sings' 'is singing' |
| | -ay | heesay heesayay | heestay heesaysay | 'sang' 'was singing' |
| FUTURE | -i doonaa | heesi doonaa | heesi doontaa | 'will sing' |
| | -o | heeso heesayo | heestoo heesaysoo | 'sings' 'is singing' |
| IMPERATIVE | | hees | | 'sing!' |

ma heeso

ma heesi doono – 'he will not sing'

waxaan rabaa in uu heeso.

Jag vill att han sjunger.

'I want him to sing.'

Reduced verb forms

If the subject of a clause is focused, there cannot be any subject ending or any subject pronoun.

Also the form of the verb is affected. If the predicative complement is an adjective, the verb **yahay** is completely absent in the present tense.

Reducerade verbformer

Om subjektet i en mening är fokuserat ska man inte använda någon subjektsändelse och inte heller något kort subjektspronomen.

Även predikatsverbets form påverkas. Om predikativet är ett adjektiv utelämnas verbet **yahay** i presens helt och hållet.

Dád badani waxa ay kú nool yihiiin MAGAALOÓYINKA.

Many people live in (the) CITIES. | Många mäniskor bor i STÄDER(NA).

DÁD BADAN baa kú nool _Ø_ magaaloóyinka.

MANY PEOPLE live in cities. | MÅNGA MÄNNISKOR bor i städer(na).

(Also notice the generic definite form **magaaloóyinka**. (Lägg märke till den generiska användningen av **magaaloóyinka**.)

Other verbs in the present tense shorten the ending **-aa** to **-a**. För andra verb i presens förkortas ändelsen **-aa** till **-a**.

Cali wuu akhrínayaa.

Ali is reading. | Ali läser.

CÁLI baa akhrínaya.

ALI is reading. It's ALI that's reading.

ALI läser. Det är ALI som läser.

SAAKÍIBKIIS baa kú riíxaya. *It's HIS FRIEND that's pushing.*

Det är HANS VÄN som skjuter på.

Also the person marking suffices for *you, they* are missing in these short forms.

Även de personbetecknande suffixen för *du, de* saknas i dessa korta former.

FULL PRESENT TENSE FORMS

| | | |
|--------|-----------------------|------------|
| 1 sg | waa aan jiraa | |
| 2 sg | waa aad jirtaa | -t- |
| 3 sg m | waa uu jiraa | |
| 3 sg f | waa ay jirtaa | -t- |
| 3 pl | waa ay jiraan | -n |

REDUCED PRESENT TENSE FORMS

| |
|------------------------|
| aníga baa jira |
| adiga baa jira |
| isaga baa jira |
| iyada baa jirta |
| iyaga baa jira |

A focused subject can also occur at the end of the clause. It is then focused by the particle **waxa**.

Ett fokuserat subjekt kan ävenstå i slutet av meningens och fokuseras med hjälp av fokuspartikeln **waxa**.

Daaqadáha waxa kú jira muraayadó. *In the windows there are PANES.*

I fönstren finns det GLASRUTOR.

Sound alternations

If a stem that ends in two consonants is followed by an ending that starts with a consonant, the resulting group of three consonants must be broken up by a vowel, as three consonants in a row is an impossible structure in Somali.

Om en stam som slutar på två konsonanter följs av en ändelse som börjar med en konsonant måste dessa tre konsonanter separeras med en vokal. Tre konsonanter är en omöjlig kombination i somaliskan.

Also if there is no ending, a vowel must be added as a Somali word cannot end in two consonants.

Finally, /k/ may only occur before a vowel. Before a consonant and word-finally, it has to be replaced by /g/.

| | | |
|---------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| infinitive | /ar_k/-/i/ | arki |
| pres. progr. | /ar_k/-/ay/-/aa/ | arkayaa, arkaysaa |
| pres. 1/3 sg. masc. | /ar_k/ -/aa/ | arkaa |
| pres. 2/3 sg. fem. | /ar_k/-/t/-/aa/ | aragtaa |
| imperative sing. | /ar_k/ | arag |

Referential demonstrative *-kii* / *-tii*

Besides the definite article **-ka/-ta** and the two demonstrative pronouns and endings **kan/tan** and **kaas/taas**, Somali also has the demonstrative pronoun **kii/tii** which is used when one wants to point out that an object is not just definite, but that it is also expected to be known on beforehand by the interlocutors. The speaker assumes that the listener(s) should know about the thing that the noun refers to.

In English this can be accomplished by adding *you know*¹ after the noun phrase in question.

Kuwani waa waalidkii carruurta.

These are the parents (you know) of the children. | Detta är föräldrarna (du vet) till barnen.

In the above example it doesn't necessarily mean that you are supposed

Även då det inte finns någon ändelse måste en vokal skjutas in då ett somaliskt ord inte får sluta på två konsonanter.

Dessutom kan /k/ bara förekomma direkt före vokal. Det ersätts med /g/ före konsonat och sist i ord.

Förutom den bestämda artikeln **-ka/-ta** och de båda demonstrativa pronomena och ändelserna **kan/tan** och **kaas/taas**, har somaliskan också det demonstrativa pronomenet **kii/tii** som används när man vill framhålla att ett föremål inte bara är bestämt utan dessutom **förväntas vara känd sedan tidigare för båda samtalsparterna**. Talaren anser att lyssnaren borde känna till det som substantivet refererar till.

På svenska måste detta uttryckas med tillägget *du vet*² efter substantivfrasen i fråga.

¹ The addition of *you know* has become so common in English that some researchers actually think of it as a grammaticalised marker, which would make it quite similar to the Somali **-kii/-tii**.

² På engelska lär sådana tillägg av *you know* ha blivit så vanliga att vissa menar att detta skulle ha blivit en grammatisk markör även i engelskan.

to know those specific parents in person, just de här barnens föräldrar, utan but rather that you are expected to know snarare att man förväntas känna till att the fact that it's normal for children to barn rimligtvis har föräldrar. have parents.

Possessive pronouns and endings

Another suffix is introduced. For the full table, see BSG § 9.4. Ännu ett suffix dyker nu upp. För en fullständig tabell se § 9.4.

| | | | |
|-------|--------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| /iin/ | kiinna / tiinna | <i>yours, your</i> er, ert | short: -kiin / -tiin |
| | gurigiinna | <i>your house</i> ert hus | |
| | hooyadiin | <i>your mother</i> er mor | |

NB! This pronoun refers to several owners, like French *votre* or Slavic *vaš*.

Obligatory contractions

The subject pronoun **la one** is obligatorily contracted with the prepositions into one word, and /k/ changes into /g/ between vowels.

Subjektspronomenet **la man** dras obligatoriskt samman med prepositionerna till ett ord. Samtidigt övergår prepositionens /k/ till /g/.

| | | |
|----------------|---------------|--|
| la + ú | → loó | <i>one ... to/for/in (manner)</i> <i>man ... till/för/åt/på (sätt)</i> |
| la + kú | → lagú | <i>one ... in/on/with (tool)</i> <i>man ... i/på/med</i> |
| la + ká | → lagá | <i>one ... from/of/about/than</i> <i>man ... från/ur/av/om/än</i> |
| la + lá | → lalá | <i>one ... with</i> <i>man ... med</i> |

Expressions of similarity

Similarity is often expressed by *like* in English. Somali doesn't have this kind of function word. Instead, the noun **sída the way, the manner** is used.

Vid jämförelse används ofta *som* på svenska. Somaliskan har inte något sådant grammatiskt funktionsord, utan använder substantivet **sída sättet**.

Gurigiinnu ma yahay sída Rooble gurigooda?

your.house.SBJ ? is the.manner Roble their.house

Is your house the way Roble's house (is)?

Is your house like Roble's house? | Är ert hus (likadant) som Robles hus?

3. Layliyo

Online: [1.1 The plural of nouns](#)

Online: [1.2 The plural of nouns, part 2](#)

Translate into Somali

1. Saynab is going to (the) school now.
2. Today Saynab is not going to school.
3. Saynab goes to school every day.
4. Today Saynab went to (the) school at seven o'clock.
5. Today Saynab wants to go to school --> make it --> ...wants that she goes to school.
6. Today Saynab doesn't want to go to school. --> make it --> ...doesn't want that she goes to school.
7. Go to school!
8. Ahmed is going home now.
9. Today Ahmed is not going home.
10. Ahmed goes to the market every day.
11. Today Ahmed wants to go to the market. --> make it --> ...wants that he goes to the market.
12. Today Ahmed doesn't want to go to the market. --> make it --> ...doesn't want that he goes to the market.
13. He went yesterday.
14. Sarah is playing football.
15. She is playing with Ahmed.
16. They are playing on the road.
17. Ahmed is writing a story.
18. He is not writing a long story.
19. He is writing in his book.
20. He doesn't want to write.

3. Tone-marked texts

<https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/435651>

3. Translations

Guryo magaalo

City houses

Hus i stan

Kani waa Rooble gurigooda.

This is Roble's house

Det här är Robles hus.

Waxa uu ku yaallaa magaalo.

It is located in a city

Det ligger i en stad.

The verb **yaallaa** is generally not used about living beings, only about objects, hence it must be the house, not Roble, that is in a city.

Gurigiinnu ma yahay sida Rooble gurigooda?

Is your house like Roble's house?

Är ert hus som Robles hus?

Sawir gurigiinna.

Draw your house.

Rita ert hus.

Kani waa guri magaalo.

This is a city house.

Det här är ett hus i stan.

Dad badan baa ku nool magaalooinka.

Many people live in the cities.

Många personer bor i städerna.

Iyagu waxa ay ku nool yihiin guryaha magaalada.

They live in urban houses.

De bor i urbana hus (hus av den typ som är vanlig i stan).

Adigu ma ku noosahay guri magaalo?

Do you live in an urban house?

Bor du i ett hus av stadstyp?

Eeg sawirka.

Look at the picture.

Titta på bilden.

Maxaa aad **ku** aragtaa?

What do you see **there / in** it (the picture)?

Vad ser du **där / på** den (bilden)?

Kuwani waa guryo magaalo.

These are urban houses.

Det här är hus som finns i staden.

Dadka magaaladu waxa ay ku nool yihiin guryo kala duwan.

People in the city live in different (kinds of) houses.

Människorna i staden bor i olika (slags) hus.

kala duwan (*with*) *different (properties)* | (*med*) *olika (egenskaper)*

It's not just that they don't live all in the same house, i.e. in different houses, it's rather about the houses being different from each other. Therefore it might be good to add kinds of.

Dadkani waxa ay dhisayaan guri magaalo.

These people are building an urban house.

De här personerna bygger ett hus av stadstyp.

Waa maxay alaabta uu ka samaysan yahay guri magaalo?

What are the things that an urban house is made of?

Vilka saker är ett hus i staden gjort av?

Gidaarrada gurigan waxa lagu dhisay dhagax.

The walls of this house are build of stone. (lit. one built with stone)

Väggarna i det här huset har man byggt med sten.

Saqafka waxa lagu sameeyay jiingado.

The roof is made of corrugated metal sheets. (lit. one made with corrugated...)

Taket har man gjort med korrugerad plåt.

Albaabka waxa lagu sameeyay loox.

The door was made of planks/wood.

Dörren har man gjort med brädor.

Daaqadaha waxa ku jira muraayado.

In the windows there are panes of glass.

I fönstren finns det glasrutor.

Hodan gurigooda

Hodan's house

Hodans hus / hem

Kani waa Hodan gurigooda.

This is Hodan's house.

Det här är Hodans hus / hem.

Hodan qoyskoodu waxa uu ku nool yahay beer dhexdeed.

Hodan's family lives in the middle of a field / farm.

Hodans familj bor (mitt) på en bondgård.

Waxa uu qoysku ku nool yahay guriga beerta.

The family lives in the house of the farm.

Familjen bor i jordbrukets / gården's hus / huset på gården.

Idinku ma ku nooshihiin beer?

Do you live on a farm?

Bor ni på en bondgård?

Maxaa ay dadku beerta ka qabtaan?

What do the people do on the farm?

Vad gör folket på gården?

Sawir guri beeraley.

Draw a farmer's house.

Rita ett jordbukarhem/hus.

Dhisidda guri beeraley

The construciton of a farmer's house

Bygget av ett jordbrukarhus.

Dadka ka muuqda sawirku waxa ay dhisayaan guri beeraley.

The people that can be seen on the picture are building a farmer's house.

Folket som syns på bilden bygger ett jordbrukarhus.

Iyagu waa beeraley.

They are farmers.

De är bönder.

Maxaa ay u adeegsadaan dhisidda guriga?

What do they use for the construction of the house? ...use to build the house?

Vad använder de för bygget av huset? ...för att bygga huset?

Ma taqaannaa hees la qaado marka la dhisayo guri beeraley?

Do you know a song that one sings when one is building a farmer's house?

Känner du till en sång som man sjunger när man bygger ett jordbrukskarhus?

Bal ku hees heestaa!

Go ahead and sing that song.

Ta och sjung den sången.

heestaa = heestaas

Alaabta loo adeegsado dhisidda guriga beerta

The things one uses for the construction of the farmer's house

Sakerna som man använder för bygget av jordbrukskarhuset

Eeg sawirkan guri beeraley.

Look at this picture of a farmer's house.

Titta på den här bilden av ett jordbrukskarhus.

Waa maxay alaabta uu ka samaysan yahay?

What are the things that it (the house) is made of?

Vad är sakerna som det (huset) är gjort av?

The subject is **uu** which must refer back to a preceding masculine noun:
guri in the preceding sentence.

Gidaarrada gurigan waxa lagu dhisay laamo iyo dhoobo.

The walls of this house have been built of branches and clay.

Väggarna i det här huset har man byggt med grenar och lera.

Saqafka waxa **lagu** daboolay laamo iyo caws.

The roof is has been covered **with** branches and straw.

Taket har man täckt **med** grenar och halm.

Albaabka waxa lagu sameeyay loox.

The door has been made with planks.

Dörren har man gjort av brädor.

Daaqaddu **aad** ayey **u** yar tahay.

The window is **very** small.

Fönstret är **väldigt** litet.

aad + u *very*

Daaqaddu ma laha muraayad.

The window doesn't have any pane.

Fönstret har inte någon glasruta.

Nadiifinta guri beeraley

The cleaning of a farmer's house

Städningen av bondens hus

Kani waa guri beeraley oo nadiif ah.

This is a farmer's house that is clean = a clean farmer's house.

Det här är ett jordbrukskarhus som är rent = ett rent jordbrukskarhus.

Hooyadu waxa ay qashinka ku ridaysaa god laga qoday bannaanka.

Mother throws the garbage in a burrow/hole that one has dug outdoors.

Mamman kastar skräpet i en grop som man har grävt utomhus.

Godku waa uu ka baxsan yahay guriga.

The burrow is situated at a distance (distanced) from the house.

Gropen är belägen en bit bort från huset.

Magacow walxaha ka muuqda sawirka.

Tell the names of the objects that can be seen in the picture.

Namnge föremålen som syns på bilden.

Maxaa ay samaynayaan?

What are they doing?

Vad gör de?

Sahra waxa ay samayn kartaa waxyaabo badan.

Sahra can do many things.

Sahra kan göra många saker.

Waxa ay quudinaysaa digaagga.

She is feeding the hens/the chicken.

Hon håller på att mata hönorna.

digaag -ga is a collective noun.

digaagad -da is a singular noun.

Waxa ay **u** daadinaysaa galley.

She is scattering maize **for them**.

Hon håller på att strö ut majs **åt dem**.

Axmed lo' buu waraabinaya.

Ahmed is giving water to the dairy cattle.

Ahmed håller på att ge vatten till nötboskapen.

Waxa uu ka keenay meel fog.

He has brought them from a distant place.

Han har tagit med dem från en plats långt borta.

Waa uu daallan yahay.

He is tired.

Han är trött.

Safiya waxa ay siddaa biyo.

Safia is carrying water.

Safiya bär vatten.

Aamina waxa ay la socotaa Safiya.

Amina is walking with Safia

Amina går tillsammans med Safia.

Waxa ay tegayaan guriga.

They are going home.

De håller på att gå hem.

Kuwani waa waalidkii carruurta.

These are the children's parents (you know).

Detta är barnens föräldrar (du vet).

Hooyadu cunto ayey karinaysaa.

The mother is cooking food.

Mamman håller på att laga mat.

Aabbuu beerta ayuu falayaa.

The father is cultivating the field.

Pappan håller på att plöja åkern

28.3

– Ma macallin baad tahay?

Are you a teacher?

Är du lärare?

– Haa, macallin baan ahay.

Yes, I am a teacher.

Ja, jag är lärare.

– Xaggee baad ku dhalatay?

Where were you born?

Var är du född?

– Marka baan ku dhashay.

I was born in Marka.

Jag är född i Marka.

Marka is a city on the coast 70 km south of Mogadishu.

Somali: Marka

English: Merca

Swedish: Marka/Merca

3. Solutions

1. Saynab is going to (the) school now.

Hadda Saynab waxa ay tagaysaa dugsiga.

Saynab hadda waxa ay tagaysaa dugsiga

2. Today Saynab is not going to school.

Maanta Saynab ma tagayso dugsiga.

Maanta Saynab ma ay tagayso dugsiga

3. Saynab goes to school every day.

Saynab waxa ay tagtaa dugsiga maalin kasta.

4. Today Saynab went to (the) school at seven o'clock.

Maanta Saynab waxa ay tagtay dugsiga toddobadii.

5. Today Saynab wants that she goes to school.

Maanta Saynab waxa ay rabtaa in ay tagto dugsiga

6. Today Saynab doesn't want to go to school.

Maanta Saynab ma rabto in ay tagto dugsiga

Maanta Saynab ma ay rabto in ay tagto dugsiga

7. Go to school!

Tag dugsiga.

Dugsiga tag.

8. Ahmed is going home now.

Axmed waxa uu tagayaa guriga hadda

9. Today Ahmed is not going home.

Maanta Axmed ma tagayo guriga

Maanta Axmed ma uu tagayo guriga

10. Ahmed goes to the market every day.

Axmed waxa uu tagaa suuqa maalin kasta

11. Today Ahmed wants that he goes to the market.

Maanta Axmed waxa uu rabaa in uu tago suuqa

12. Today Ahmed doesn't want to go to the market.

Maanta Axmed ma rabo in uu tago suuqa

13. He went yesterday.

Waxa uu tagay shaley

Waxa uu tagay shaley

Shaley ayaa uu tagay

14. Sahra is playing football.

Sahro waxa ay dheelaysaa kubbadda cagta

Sahro waxa ay ciyaaraysaa kubbadda cagta

15. She is playing with Ahmed.

Iyadu waxa ay la dheelaysaa Axmed

Waxa ay la ciyaaraysaa Axmed

16. They are playing on the road.

Waxa ay ku dheelayaan jidka.

Waxa ay ku ciyaarayaan jidka.

17. Ahmed is writing a story.

Axmed waxa uu qorayaan sheeko.

18. He is not writing a long story.

Ma qorayo sheeko dheer.

Ma uu qorayo sheeko dheer.

19. He is writing in his book.

Waxa uu ku qorayaan buuggiisa.

20. He doesn't want to write.

Ma rabo in uu qoro.

Ma uu rabo in uu qoro.

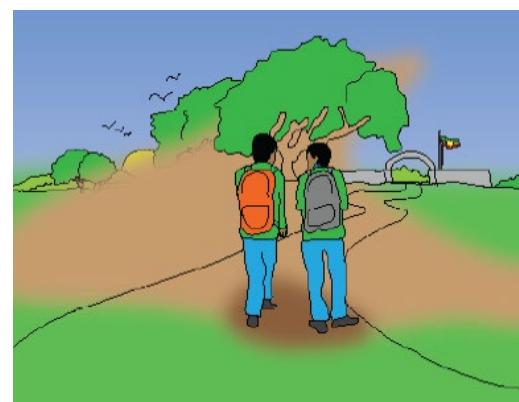
Ma uu doonayo in uu qoro.

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/435652>

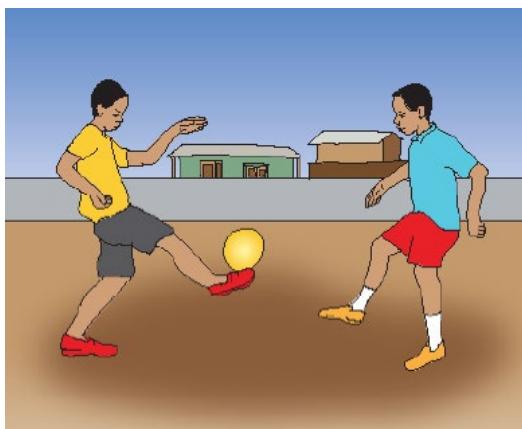
4.1 Arday Saaxiibbo Ah



Warsame iyo Naasir
waa arday.



Warsame iyo Naasir
dugsigay aadaan.



Warsame iyo Naasir
waa deris.

Warsame iyo Naasir
kubbadday daawadaan.



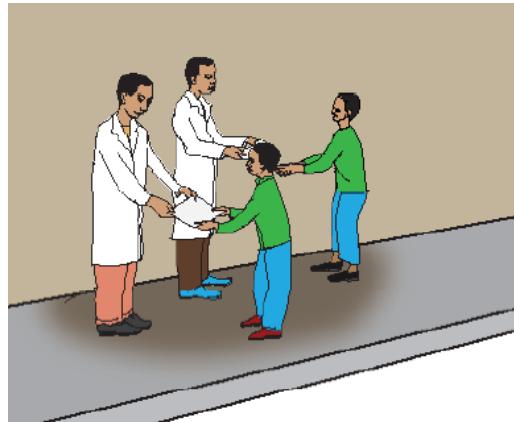
Waalidkood
way gargaaraan.

Warsame
geeduu beeray.



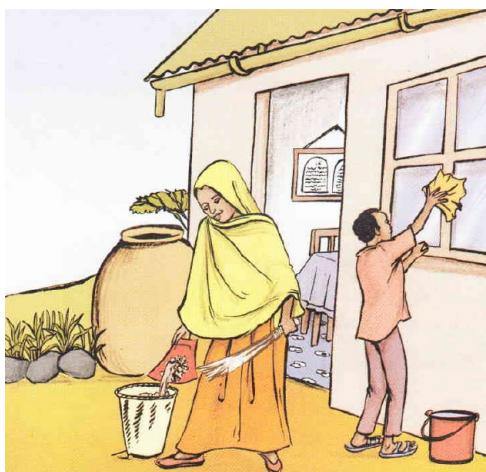
Naasir baa
geedihii waraabiyay.

Abaal-marin bay
ku heleen dadaalkoodii.



*Arday Saaxiibbo Ah, Fasalka 1aad, Toddobaadka 12aad,
Xafiiska Waxbarashada, Jigjiga 2016*

4.2 Nadiifinta guriga magaalada



Kani waa guri nadiif ah. Hooyadu qashin^s~xashiish^N ayey ku guraysaa teneg.

Adigu ma nadiifisaa gurigiinna?
Goorma ayaa aad nadiifisaa gurigiinna? Halkee baa aad ku riddaa qashinka^s~xashiishka^N?



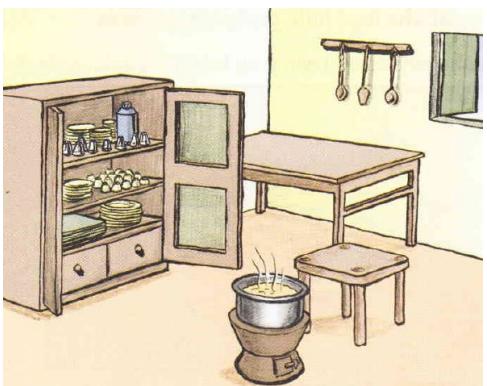
Walxaha laga helo guriga magaalada

Guryaha magaaladu waxa ay leeyihiin qolal kala duwan. Kani waa qolka fadhiga. Waa qolka aan fariisanno. Magacow walxaha ka muuqda sawirka.



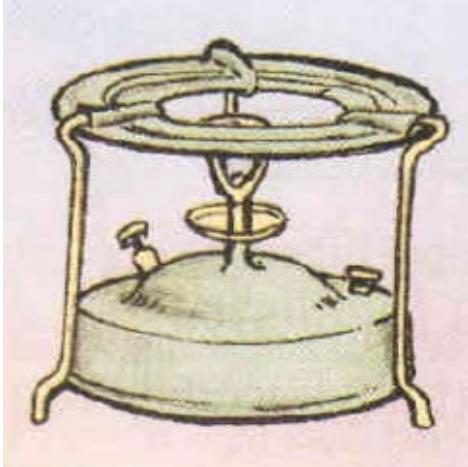
Eeg qolkan fadhiga. Waxa yaalla
dermooyin lagu fariisto.

Gurigiinna ma waxa aad ku fariisataan
kuraas mise dermooyin?

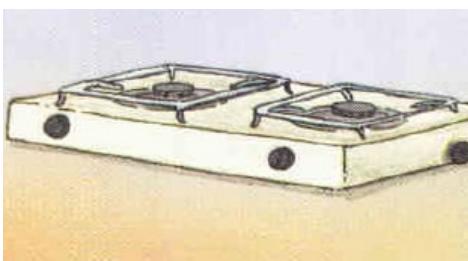


Kani waa madbakh. Waa meesha aynu
ku karsanno cuntada.

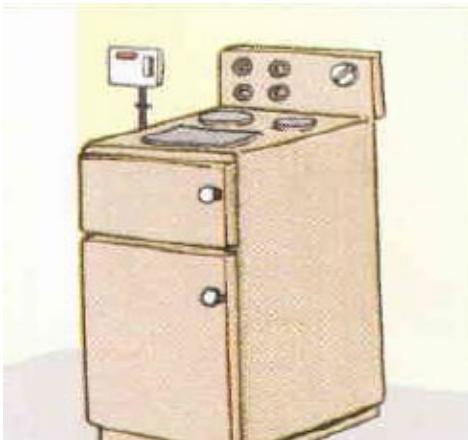
Magacow walxaha sawirka ku jira.
Maxaa aynu walxaha u adeegsanna?



Dadka qaar baa cuntada ku karsada
girgiraha.



Dad kale waxa ay adeegsadaan
makiinadda neefta.



Dad tiro yar baa wax ku karsadaa makiinadda korontada.



Dadka qaar kale dibedda ayaa ay cuntada birjiko ku karsadaan. Waxa ay cuntada ku karsadaan dhuxul. Qaar kale waxa ay cuntada ku karsadaan xaaboo.

Maxaa uu qoyskiinnu cuntada ku karsadaa? Ma waxa aad cuntada ku karsataan guriga dhexdiisa? Ma waxa aad cuntada ku karsataan guriga dibeddiisa?

Kani waa qolka hurdada.

Magacow walxaha aad ku aragto sawirka. Maxaa aynu u adeegsannaa walxahan?

Sawir qaar ka mid ah walxaha gurigiinna yaalla. Sheeg sababta aad u adeegsataan.





Qurxinta guriga magaalada

Sidee baa aynu u qurxinnaa guryaha?

Magacow waxyaabaha aad ku qurxisid gurigiinna.

Waxyaabaha gidaarrada la suro iyo daahyadu waa ay qurxiyaan guriga.

Samee sawir qurux badan si aad gidaarka ugu qurxiso.

Cilmiga Bulshada, Muqdisho & Hargeysa 2001: 20–25

4.3 Wadahadallo 29-30

29.2

- Jaamacow, xaggee baad ku dhalatay? Ma miyi mise magaalo?
- Waxaan ku dhashay magaalo.
- Ma askari baad tahay?
- Haa. Askari baan ahay.

29.3

- Ma nabad baa?
- Waa nabad.
- Caashi ma waxay ku dhalatay baadiye mise Hargeysa?
- Waxay ku dhalatay Hargeysa.

30.0

- Adiga iyo walaalkaa ma waxaad ku dhalateen Muqdisho?
- Maya. Anigu waxaan ku dhashay Burco, laakiin isagu wuxuu ku dhashay Hargeysa.

laakiín (Ar.) but | men

30.1

- Ma nabad baa?
- Waa nabad.
- Ma Muqdisho baad ku dhalatay?
- Maya. Waxaan ku dhashay Burco.

30.2

- Maxaad sheegtay?
- Nabad.
- Adiga iyo walaalkaa ma Muqdisho baad ku dhalateen?
- Maya. Anigu waxaan ku dhashay Hargeysa, laakiin isagu wuxuu ku dhashay Baraawe.

Báraawe Barawa/Brava (a city) |
Brava (en stad)

30.3

- Adiga iyo walaalkaa ma waxaad ku dhalateen Afgooye?
- Anigu waxaan ku dhashay Afgooye, laakiin walaalkay wuxuu ku dhashay Hargeysa.
- Anigu Burco ayaan ku dhashay.

Beginning in Somali (1966: 75–78)

4. Erayo cusub

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Búrco | <i>Burao (a city)</i> | <i>Burao (en stad)</i> |
| Ceerigaábo | <i>Erigavo/Erigabo (city)</i> | <i>Erigabo (en stad)</i> |
| dhashay | <i>I / he was born</i> | <i>jag / han föddes, är född</i> |
| dhalatay | <i>you were / she was born</i> | <i>du / hon föddes, är född</i> |
| kú | <i>in</i> | <i>i</i> |
| xág -ga | <i>direction</i> | <i>riktning</i> |
| xaggeé? | <i>where, which direction</i> | <i>var, var, vilken riktning</i> |
| Hargeýsa | <i>Hargeisa (a city)</i> | <i>Hargeysa (en stad)</i> |
| Áfgooye | <i>X (a city)</i> | <i>X (en stad)</i> |
| Berbéra | <i>X (a city)</i> | <i>X (en stad)</i> |
| magaálo, magaaláda | <i>town, city</i> | <i>stad</i> |
| mise | <i>or (in questions)</i> | <i>eller (i frågor)</i> |
| míyi -ga | <i>countryside</i> | <i>landsbygd</i> |
| qabataa | <i>you do, she does</i> | <i>du gör, hon gör</i> |
| Márka | <i>Merca (a city)</i> | <i>Marka (en stad)</i> |

4. Word formation

qurúx -da *beauty*

qurúx badan *beautiful*

qurxiyaa *makes beautiful, decorates*

qurxín -ta *decorating, decoration*

Contractions / Sammandragningar

wáxaan / waxáan = wáxa aan / waxáa aan

coll./talspr. xaggaád / xaggeéd = standard xaggeé bāad / bāa aad

coll./talspr. Muqdíshāan = standard Muqdishó bāan / bāa aan

coll./talspr. Hargeysaad = Hargeysa baa aad

coll./talspr. Burcaad = Burco baa aad

coll./talspr. magaaládāad = standard magaaláda bāad / bāa aad

wúxuu = waxa uu

Say in Somali / Säg på somaliska(25)

| | |
|--|---|
| Where were you born? – I was born in Burao. (Burco) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Burao. (Burco) |
|--|---|

| | |
|---|--|
| Where were you born? – I was born in Hargeisa. (Hargeysa) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Hargeysa. |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Erigavo. (Ceerigaabo) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Erigabo. (Ceerigaabo) |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Afgooye. (Afgooye) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Afgooye. (Afgooye) |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Galkayo. (Gaalkacyo) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Galkayo. (Gaalkacyo) |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Mogadishu. (Muqdisho) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Mogadishu. (Muqdisho) |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Merca. (Marka) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Marka. |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Borama. (Boorama) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Borama. (Boorama) |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Bosaso. (Boosaaso) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Bosaso. (Boosaaso) |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Berbera. (Berbera) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Berbera. |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Kismayo. (Kismaayo) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Kismayo (Kismaayo) |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Las Anod. (Laas Caanood) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Las Anod. (Laas Caanood) |
| Where were you born? – I was born in Brava. (Baraawe) | Var är du född? – Jag är född i Brava. (Baraawe) |

Suggested translations / Förslag till översättning

1.–13. Xaggéed ku dhalatay?

Xaggeé baad ku dhalatay?

1. – Waxaan ku dhashay Burco.
2. – Waxaan ku dhashay Hargeysa.
3. – Waxaan ku dhashay Ceerigaabo.
4. – Waxaan ku dhashay Afgooye.
5. – Waxaan ku dhashay Gaalkacyo.
6. – Waxaan ku dhashay Muqdisho.
7. – Waxaan ku dhashay Marka.

8. – Waxaan ku dhashay Boorama.
9. – Waxaan ku dhashay Boosaaso.
10. – Waxaan ku dhashay Berbera.
11. – Waxaan ku dhashay Kismaayo.
12. – Waxaan ku dhashay Laas Caanood.
13. – Waxaan ku dhashay Baraawe.

Say in Somali / Säg på somaliska (26)

| | |
|--|---|
| Were you born in Burao? – Yes, I was born in Burao. (Burco) | Är du född i Burao? – Ja, jag är född i Burao. (Burco) |
| Were you born in Hargeisa? – Yes, I was born in Hargeysa. | Är du född i Hargeysa? – Jag är född i Hargeysa. |
| Were you born in Erigavo? – Yes, I was born in Erigabo. (Ceerigaabo) | Är du född i Erigabo? – Jag är född i Erigabo. (Ceerigaabo) |
| Were you born in Afgooye? – Yes, I was born in Afgooye. (Afgooye) | Är du född i Afgoye? – Jag är född i Afgoye. (Afgooye) |
| Were you born in Galkayo? – Yes, I was born in Galkayo. (Gaalkacyo) | Är du född i Galkayo? – Jag är född i Galkayo. (Gaalkacyo) |
| Were you born in Mogadishu? – Yes, I was born in Mogadishu. (Muqdisho) | Är du född i Mogadishu? – Jag är född i Mogadishu. (Muqdisho) |
| Were you born in Merka? – Yes, I was born in Merka. | Är du född i Marka? – Jag är född i Marka. |
| Were you born in Borama? – Yes, I was born in Borama. (Boorama) | Är du född i Borama? – Jag är född i Borama. (Boorama) |
| Were you born in Bosaso? – Yes, I was born in Bosaso. (Boosaaso) | Är du född i Bosaso? – Jag är född i Bosaso. (Boosaaso) |
| Were you born in Berbera? – Yes, I was born in Berbera. | Är du född i Berbera? – Jag är född i Berbera. |
| Were you born in Kismayo? – Yes, I was born in Kismayo (Kismaayo) | Är du född i Kismayo? – Jag är född i Kismayo (Kismaayo) |
| Were you born in Las Anod? – Yes, I was born in Las Anod. (Laas Caanood) | Är du född i Las Anod? – Jag är född i Las Anod. (Laas Caanood) |
| Were you born in Brava? – Yes, I was born in Brava. (Baraawe) | Är du född i Brava? – Jag är född i Brava. (Baraawe) |

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| I'm a clerk. | Jag är tjänsteman. |
| I'm a teacher. | Jag är lärare. |
| I'm a student. | Jag är student. |
| I'm a politician. | Jag är politiker. |
| I'm a soldier. | Jag är soldat. |
| I'm a shopkeeper. | Jag är expediter. |

Suggested translations / Förslag till översättning

1. Ma Burco baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Burco baan ku dhashay.

Ma Hargeysa baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Hargeysa baan ku dhashay.

Ma Ceerigaabo baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Ceerigaabo baan ku dhashay.

Ma Afgooye baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Afgooye baan ku dhashay.

Ma Gaalkacyo baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Gaalkacyo baan ku dhashay.

Ma Muqdisho baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Muqdisho baan ku dhashay.

Ma Marka baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Marka baan ku dhashay.

Ma Boorama baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Boorama baan ku dhashay.

Ma Boosaaso baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Boosaaso baan ku dhashay.

Ma Berbera baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Berbera baan ku dhashay.

Ma Kismaayo baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Kismaayo baan ku dhashay.

Ma Laas Caanood baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Laas Caanood baan ku dhashay.

Ma Baraawe baad ku dhalatay? – Haa, Baraawe baan ku dhashay.

Waxaan ahay karraani.

Waxaan ahay macallin.

Waxaan ahay arday.

Waxaan ahay siyaasi.

Waxaan ahay askari.

Waxaan ahay dukaanle.

Say in Somali / Säg på somaliska (27)

Were you born in the countryside or in the city?

Were you born in Hargeisa or in Berbera?

Were you born in Mogadishu or in Kismayo?

Were you born in Las Anod or Burao?

Were you born in Merka or Brava?

Är du född på landet eller i stan?

Är du född i Hargeysa eller Berbera?

Är du född i Mogadishu eller Kismayo?

Är du född i Las Anod eller Burao?

Är du född i Marka eller Brava?

Suggested translations / Förslag till översättning

1. Ma miyi baad ku dhalatay mise magaalo?
2. Ma Hargeysa baad ku dhalatay mise Berbera?
3. Ma Muqdisho baad ku dhalatay mise Kismaayo?
4. Ma Laas Caanood baad ku dhalatay mise Burco?
5. Ma Marka baad ku dhalatay mise Baraawe?

4. Naxwe

The past tense

In the 3rd person plural, the past tense morpheme is /ee/.

SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

ENKELT PRESENS

waa uu dhacaa

he falls

waa ay dhacdaa

she falls

waa ay dhacaan

they fall

PROGRESSIVE PRESENT TENSE

PROGRESSIVT PRESENS

waa uu dhacayaa

he is falling

waa ay dhacaysaa

she is falling

waa ay dhacayaan

they are falling

Preteritum

I 3:e person plural är suffixet som markerar preteritum /ee/.

SIMPLE PAST TENSE

ENKELT PRETERITUM

waa uu dhacay

he fell

waa ay dhacday

she fell

waa ay dhaceen

they fell

PROGRESSIVE PAST TENSE

PROGRESSIVT PRETERITUM

waa uu dhacayay

he was falling

waa ay dhacaysay

she was falling

waa ay dhacayeen

they were falling

4. Layliyo

Self-correcting exercises

No exercises available at the moment

Translate into Somali

1. Write the missing words in the empty places.

Skriv de saknade orden på de tomma platserna.

2. Write suitable numbers under the picture.

Skriv lämpliga tal under bilden.

3. Which number is suitable for the picture?

Vilket tal är passande för bilden?

4. Is this Ali?

- Är detta Ali?
5. Is this Sahra?
Är detta Sahra?
6. Is this a ball?
Är detta en boll?
7. Is this your mum?
Är detta din mamma?
8. What time is it?
Hur mycket är klockan?
9. It's four o'clock.
Den är fyra.
10. It's half past two.
Den är halv tre.
11. My sister's name is Amina.
Min syster heter Amina.
12. My brother's name is Hassan.
Min bror heter Hassan.
13. Write a short text about your siblings.
Skriv en kort text (som handlar) om dina syskon.
14. I go to Sheikh Bashir's primary school.
Jag går i Schejk Bashirs lågstadieskola.
15. My teacher's name is Abdi.
Min lärare heter Abdi.
16. What colour are your trousers?
Vilken färg är dina byxor?
17. My trousers are blue.
Mina byxor är blå.
18. Ahmed is looking at a small bird.
Ahmed tittar på en liten fågel.
19. Sahra is reading a book.
Sahra läser en bok.
20. Her book is new.

Hennes bok är ny.

21. What are the children doing now?

Vad gör barnen nu?

22. Write three short sentences about (it).

Skriv tre korta meningar om (det).

23. Amina wants to build a big house.

Amina vill bygga ett stort hus.

24. Omar likes to play with cars.

Omar tycker om att leka med bilar.

Check your translations:

<https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Zy58esYp25bd4sHkpFQisI1I-7CGOBp4dg3ZUNLQbx0/edit?usp=sharing>

4. Tone-marked texts

4. Translations

Arday Saaxiibbo Ah

Students that are friends. / Schoolmates

Studiekamrater / Skolkompisar

Warsame iyo Naasir waa arday.

Warsame and Nasir are students.

Warsame och Nasir är studenter /elever.

Warsame iyo Naasir dugsiga bay aadaan.

Warsame and Nasir go to school.

Warsame och Nasir går i skolan.

Warsame iyo Naasir waa daris.

Warsame and Nasir are neighbors.

Warsame och Nasir är grannar.

Warsame iyo Naasir kubbad bay daawadaan.

Warsame and Nasir watch football.

Warsame och Nasir tittar på fotboll.

Waalidkood way gargaaraan.

They help their parents.

De hjälper / stöttar sina föräldrar.

Actually, this sentence is grammatically ambiguous. **Waalidkood** could just as well be the subject, as the object, so its the context that leads us to this translation.

Warsame geed buu beeray.

Warsame planted a plant.

Warsame har planterat ett träd / en växt.

This and the following two sentences are in the past tense, expressed by **-ay** and **-een**.

Naasir baa geedihii waraabiyay.

Nasir watered the plants.

Nasir har vattnat träden / växterna.

geed tree, plant

geedó trees

geedáha the trees

geedíhii those trees you know < geedáh+ii

Abaalmarin bay ku heleen dadaalkoodii.

They were rewarded for their effort(s). / lit. They received a reward...

De har fått belöning för sin möda.

Nadiifinta guriga magaalada

The cleaning of the city house / home

Rengöringen / Städningen av huset i stan

Kani waa guri nadiif ah.

This is a clean house.

Det här är ett rent hem / hus.

guri nadiif ah *a house being a clean thing = a clean house*

Hooyadu qashin/xashiish ayey ku guraysaa teneg.

Mother is collecting garbage in a container.

Mamma håller på att samla ihop skräp i en burk / behållare.

Adigu ma nadiifisaa gurigiinna?

Do you clean your house / home?

Städar du ert hem / hus?

Goorma aaya aad nadiifisaa gurigiinna?

When do you clean your house / home?

När städar du ert hem / hus?

Halkee baa aad ku riddaa qashinka/xashiishka?

Where do you throw away the garbage?

Var slänger du skräpet?

Walxaha laga helo guriga magaalada

Things one finds in a city **house / home**

Saker man hittar i **ett hus** i stan

These nouns are (most probably) used in a generic (general) sense, serving as 'prototypes' for objects and houses of this kind. Somali then uses definite nouns, whereas indefinite nouns are often preferred in English and Swedish.

Guryaha magaaladu waxa ay leeyihiin qolal kala duwan.

City houses have different (kinds of) rooms.

Hus i stan har olika (slags) rum.

Kani waa qolka fadhiga.

This is the living room / sitting room.

Det här är vardagsrummet.

Waa qolka aan fariisanno.

It's the room where we sit.

Det är rummet där vi sitter.

Magacow walxaha ka muuqda sawirka.

Tell the names of the things that can be seen in the picture.

Namnge sakerna som syns på bilden.

Eeg qolkan fadhiga.

Look at this living / sitting room.

Titta på det här vardagsrummet.

Waxa yaalla dermooyin lagu fariisto.

There are carpets to sit on (that one sits on).

Det finns mattor som man sitter på.

Gurigiinna ma waxa aad ku fariisataan kuraas mise dermooyin?

In your house, do you sit on chairs or mats.

Sitter ni på stolar eller mattor i ert hem?

Kani waa madbak.

This is a kitchen.

Det här är ett kök.

Waa meesha aynu ku karsanno cuntada.

It is the place where we cook food.

Det är platsen där vi lagar mat

Magacow walxaha sawirka ku jira.

Tell the name of the objects (that are) in the picture.

Namnge föremålen (som finns) på bilden.

Maxaa aynu walxaha u adeegsannaa?

What do we use the objects for?

Vad använder vi föremålen till?

Dadka qaar baa cuntada ku karsada girgiraha.

Some of the people cook food on/with a (kerosene) cooker.

En del personer lagar mat på en (fotogeneldad) kokplatta.

The definite form **girgiráha** (indefinite **girgíre**) is a generic definite form, referring to the whole category of such stoves.

Dad kale waxa ay adeegsadaan makiinadda neefta.

Other people use a gas stove.

Andra personer använder gasspis.

Phrases consisting of two nouns are almost always used in their definite form, e.g. **makiinadda neefta** *gas stove*.

Dad tiro yar baa wax ku karsada makiinadda korontada.

A small number of people cook on an electric stove.

Ett litet antal personer lagar mat på elspis.

Dadka qaar kale dibedda ayaa ay cuntada birjiko ku karsadaan.

Some other people cook outside on / with a small (charcoal) cooker.

En del andra personer lagar mat utomhus med / på en (koleldad) kokplatta.

girgíre and **birjiko** or **burjiko** are synonymous. They are made of stone or metal, and may be fuelled by charcoal or kerosene.

Waxa ay cuntada ku karsadaan dhuxul.

They cook food with charcoal.

De lagar mat med hjälp av kol.

Qaar kale waxa ay cuntada ku karsadaan xaabo.

Another part cook the food with firewood.

En del andra lagar mat med hjälp av ved.

Maxaa uu qoyskiinnu cuntada ku karsadaa?

What does your family cook the food with?

Vad lagar er familj maten med?

Ma waxa aad cuntada ku karsataan guriga dhexdiisa?

Do you cook the food inside the house?

Lagar ni mat inomhus?

Ma waxa aad cuntada ku karsataan guriga dibeddiisa?

Do you cook the food outside the house?

Lagar ni mat utomhus?

Kani waa qolka hurdada.

This is the / a sleeping room / bedroom.

Det här är sovrummet / ett sovrum.

Phrases consisting of two nouns are almost always in the definite form in Somali, even if their meaning is not very definite. Therefore such noun phrases may often very well be translated into the corresponding indefinite form in European languages. In some ways the definite articles in Somali serve to signalise that the two nouns are connected.

Magacow walxaha aad ku aragto sawirka.

Tell the names of the objects that you see in the picture.

Namnge föremålen som du ser på bilden.

Maxaa aynu u adeegsannaa walxahan?

What do we use the objects for?

Vad använder vi föremålen till?

Sawir qaar ka mid ah walxaha gurigiinna yaalla.

Draw some of the objects that are (found) in your house.

Rita en del av de föremål som finns i ert hem / hus.

Sheeg sababta aad u adeegsataan.

Tell the reason that you use them for. Say what you use them for.

Berätta orsaken som ni använder dem för.

Berätta orsaken till att ni använder dem.

There is no object pronoun in the Somali clause, since there are no words directly corresponding to *it*, *them* as an object. They need to be added in the translation based on the understanding of the context.

Qurxinta guriga magaalada

Decoration of the city home

Utsmyckning av ett hus i stan.

Sidee baa aynu u qurxinnaa guryaha?

In what way do we decorate the houses?

På vilket sätt dekorerer vi hemmen / husen?

Magacow waxyaabaha aad ku qurxisid gurigiinna.

Tell the names of the objects that you decorate your house with.

Namnge föremålen som du dekorerer ert hus / hem med.

The subjunctive ending **-tid** / **-sid** is specific only for the second person singular.

The more regular variant **-to** / **-so** is also used, especially in a more casual, everyday style.

Waxyaabaha gidaarrada la suro iyo daahyadu waa ay qurxiyaan guriga.

The objects (taht) one hangs on the walls and the curtains decorate the house.

Sakerna som (man) hänger på väggarna och gardinerna dekorerer hemmet.

Samee sawir qurux badan si aad gidaarka ugu qurxiso.

Make a beautiful picture so that you (may) decorate the wall with it.

Gör en vacker bild så att du (kan) dekorera(r) väggen med den.

ugu < u+ku

si + u so that

ku with it points back to **sawir**

29.2

– Jaamacow, xaggaad ku dhalatay? Ma miyi mise magaalo?

Jaamac, where were you born? In the countryside or in a city?

Jama, was är du född? På landet eller i stan?

Remember not to include the Somali vocative suffix -ow in your translation.

Grammatical endings cannot be transferred into other languages, since they don't have any meaning outside the source language.

– Waxaan ku dhashay magaalo.

I was born in a city.

Jag är född i stan?

– Ma askari baad tahay?

Are you a soldier?

Är du soldat/militär?

– Haa. Askari baan ahay.

Yes. I am a soldier.

Ja, jag är soldat/militär.

30.0

– Adiga iyo walaalkaa ma waxaa ku dhalateen Muqdisho?

You and your brother, were you born in Mogadishu?

Du och din bror, är ni födda i Mogadishu?

Somali: Muqdisho

English: Mogadishu

Swedish: Mogadishu

– Maya. Anigu waxaan ku dhashay Burco, laakiin isagu wuxuu ku dhashay Hargeysa.

No. I was born in Burao, but he was born in Hargeisa.

Nej. Jag är född i Burao, men han är född i Hargeysa.

Somali: Burco, Hargeysa

English: Burao, Hargeisa

Swedish: Burao/Burco, Hargeysa (Hargeisa)

4. Solutions

Somali is a language where the word order is absolutely fixed within phrases, but the order of phrases is extremely flexible. Therefore it is crucial to understand phrases well. The sentences below are therefore separated into phrases in order to visualise these important "chunks".

1. Write the missing words in the empty places.

Skriv de saknade orden på de tomma platserna.

| | | |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| Ku qor | erayada (ka) maqan ereyada (ka) maqan | meelaha bannaan. |
| Verb phrase Predicate | Noun phrase Object | Noun phrase Adverbial ku in the verb phrase points to this noun phrase |

ka in the second phrase just emphasizes that the words are missing **from** (or **in**) some place.

| | | |
|--|--------|------------------|
| Erayada (ka) maqan Ereyada (ka) maqan | ku qor | meelaha bannaan. |
|--|--------|------------------|

| | | |
|-----------------|--------|--|
| Meelaha bannaan | ku qor | erayada (ka) maqan. ereyada (ka) maqan. |
|-----------------|--------|--|

2. Write suitable numbers under the picture.

Skriv lämpliga tal under bilden.

| | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Ku qor | tirooyin ku habboon | sawirka koostiisa. |
| Verb phrase: Predicate | Noun phrase: Object | Noun phrase: Adverbial (ku) |

hoostiisa har to end in -iisa because sawirka is masculine.

| | | |
|---------------------|--------|--------------------|
| Tirooyin ku habboon | ku qor | sawirka koostiisa. |
|---------------------|--------|--------------------|

| | | |
|-------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Sawirka koostiisa | ku qor | tirooyin ku habboon. |
|-------------------|--------|----------------------|

3. Which number is suitable for the picture?

Vilket tal är passande för bilden?

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Tiradee Lambarkee | baa | ku habboon | sawirka? masawirka? |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Verb phrase: Predicate | Noun phrase: Adverbial |

Since the subject is focused, the predicate verb takes the reduced form: **ah** 'is', but the syllable ah- is deleted after an adjective, so there is no 'visible' verb in this type of sentence.

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----|----------------------|-------------|
| Tiradee Lambarkee | baa | sawirka masawirka | ku habboon? |
|----------------------|-----|----------------------|-------------|

A. You cannot use 'waa' in a yes/no-question (polar question).

It has to be replaced by the question word 'ma'.

4. Is this Ali?

Är detta Ali?

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Kani | ma | Cali | baa? |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate | Particle phrase |

5. Is this Sahra?

Är detta Sahra?

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Tani | ma | Sahraa? | |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate | Particle phrase |

The particle 'baa' is normally contracted with female names ending in -a/-o.

6. Is this a ball?

Är detta en boll?

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Tani | ma | kubbad | baa? |
| Kani | | banooni | |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate | Particle phrase |

7. Is this your mum?

Är detta din mamma?

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Tani | ma | hooyadaa | baa? |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate | Particle phrase |

| | | |
|------|----------|--------|
| Tani | hooyadaa | miyaa? |
|------|----------|--------|

| | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Noun phrase: Subject | Noun phrase: Predicate | Particle phrase |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|

8. What time is it?

Hur mycket är klockan?

| | | |
|-----------------|---|--|
| Waa | immisadii? immisa saac? meeqa saac? | |
| Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate | |

| | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Saacaddu | waa | immisadii? |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate |

9. It's four o'clock.

Den är fyra.

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| Waa | afartii. afar saac. |
| Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate |

10. It's half past two.

Den är halv tre.

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| Waa | labadii iyo badhki. labadii iyo barkii. laba saac iyo bar. |
| Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate |

11. My sister's name is Amina.

Min syster heter Amina.

| | | |
|---|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Walaashay magaceedu Magaca walaashay | waa | Aamina. Aamino. |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate |

12. My brother's name is Hassan.

Min bror heter Hassan.

| | | |
|---|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Walaalkay magaciisu Magaca walaalkay | waa | Xasan. |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate |

B. Remember that the short form of the possessive ending has to be used with
'walaal, pl. walaalo'

13. Write a short text about your siblings.

Skriv en kort text (som handlar) om dina syskon.

| | |
|-----|---|
| Qor | qoraal gaaban oo ku saabsan walaalahaa. |
|-----|---|

Here the 'about' is translated with the adjective 'saabsan - concerning, regarding' and the preposition 'ku - in/on'. This adjective is the second adjective and it must therefore be preceded by the conjunction 'oo' in order to join the two adjectives together.

| | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| Ka qor | qoraal gaaban | walaalahaa. |
| Verb phrase: Predicate | Noun phrase: Object | Noun phrase: Adverbial (ka) |

In this version 'about' is translated with the preposition 'ka - from' in front of the verb 'ka qor - write about'.

| | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|---|
| Qoraal gaaban | ka qor | walaalahaa. |
| Noun phrase: Object | Verb phrase: Predicate | Noun phrase: Adverbial (ka) |

| | | |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|
| Walaalahaa | ka qor | qoraal gaaban. |
| Noun phrase: Adverbial (ka) | Verb phrase: Predicate | Noun phrase: Object |

14. I go to Sheikh Bashir's primary school.

Jag går i Schejk Bashirs lågstadieskola.

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| | Waxa aan Waxaa n | aadaa | dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bahiir |
| Anigu | | | |
| NP: Subj | PP | VP: Pred | NP: Adverbial: Place |

15. My teacher's name is Abdi.

Min lärare heter Abdi.

| | | |
|--|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Macallinkayga magaciisu Macallinkeyga magaciisu Magaca macallinkaygu Magaca macallinkeygu | waa | Cabdi. |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate |

16. What colour are your trousers?

Vilken färg är dina byxor?

| | | |
|--------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Surwaalkaagu | waa | midabkee? |
| NP: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate |

17. My trousers are blue?

Mina byxor är blå.

| | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Surwaalkaygu Surwaalkeygu | waa | buluug |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate |

18. Ahmed is looking at a small bird.

Ahmed tittar på en liten fågel.

| | | | |
|-------|------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Axmed | waxa uu wuxuu | eegayaa fiirinayaa | shimbir yar. |
|-------|------------------|-----------------------|--------------|

| | | | |
|-------|-------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Axmed | shimbir yar | ayaa uu ayuu baa uu buu | eegayaa. fiirinayaa. |
|-------|-------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|

19. Sahra is reading a book.

Sahra läser en bok.

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----------------------------|-------|
| Sahra Sahro | waxa ay waxay | akhrinaysaa akhriyaysaa | buug. |
|----------------|------------------|----------------------------|-------|

| | | | |
|----------------|------|--|------------------------------|
| Sahra Sahro | buug | ayaa ay ayay ayey baa ay bay | akhrinaysaa. akhriyaysaa. |
|----------------|------|--|------------------------------|

20. Her book is new.

Hennes bok är ny.

| | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Buuggeedu | waa waa uu wuu | cusub yahay. cusubyahay. |
| | Particle phrase | Verb phrase: Predicate |
| | waa | mid cusub. |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Predicate |

'mid - one' is a noun > 'mid cusub - a new one'

21. What are the children doing now?

Vad gör barnen nu?

| | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Maxaa ay Maxay | carruurtu | samaynayaan | hadda? | |
| Noun phrase: Object | Particle phrase | Noun phrase: Subject | Verb phrase: Predicate | Noun phrase: Adverbial |
| | | | | |

'maxaa' is an obligatory contraction that contains 'maxay - what' and 'baa/ayaa - FOCUS'

22. Write three short sentences about (it).

Skriv tre korta meningar om (det).

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| Ka qor | saddex weedhood oo gaagaaban. saddex weeroood oo gaagaaban. |
| Verb phrase: Predicate | Noun phrase: Object |

'afar' is the head of the phrase, weedhood/weeroood is the first modifier and therefore 'oo' has to be inserted before the second modifier.

The counting form in -ood has to be used because weedh/weer is a feminine noun.

The reduplicated form 'gaagaaban' is preferred because there are several sentences.

23. Amina wants to build a big house.

Amina vill bygga ett stort hus.

| | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|---|
| Aamina Aamino | waxa ay waxay | rabtaa doonaysaa | in ay dhisto guri weyn. inay dhisto aqal weyn. |
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Verb phrase: Predicate | Noun phrase: Object: Subordinate clause |

24. Omar likes to play with cars.

Omar tycker om att leka med bilar.

| | | | |
|-------|------------------|---------------------------|---|
| Cumar | waxa uu wuxuu | jecel yahay jecelyahay | in uu ku ciyaaro baabuurro. in uu ku ciyaaro baabuurrada. inuu ku cayaaro baabuurta. |
|-------|------------------|---------------------------|---|

| | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|--|
| Noun phrase: Subject | Particle phrase | Verb phrase: Predicate | Noun phrase: Object: Subordinate clause |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|--|

The definite form of 'cars' is generally preferred because it is used as generic, referring to the category of cars.

baabuurta is the feminine singular collective form, baabuurrada is the masculine plural.

The cars are the 'tool, instrument' he is using in order to play, therefore 'ku' is used. The prepositions 'la' is used for 'company', e.g. 'with a friend'.

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455526>

5.1 Maxaa ay samaynayaan?



Waxa ay miisaamaysaa buug.

miisaamaa (Ar.) *sb weighs sth | ngn väger ngt*



Waxa uu akhrinayaan buug.



Waxa ay baranaysaa Carabi.

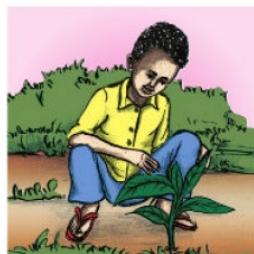
bartaa, barataa, progr. baránayaan
*is learning, studying | lär sig,
studerar*
Carábi -ga *Arabic, the Arabic
language | arabiska (språket)*



Waxa uu sawirayaan shimbir.



Waxa ay akhrinaysaa Qur'aan.



Waxa uu fiirinayaan geed.

Fiiri sawirradan.

Maxaa ay Faadumo, Caasho iyo Xasan
samaynayaan hadda?
Ka qor afar weerood.

hád -da moment (in time) |
tidpunkt
háddaa now | nu
ká about | om
weédh^N -a / **weér^S** -ta sentence,
clause | mening, sats

1.



2.



3.



4.



Af Soomaali, Fasalka 2aad, Hargeysa 2010: 6–8

5.2 Cumar mundulkiiisii



múndul -ka hut | hydda

Cumar wuxuu rabaa in uu dhiso
mundul. Wuxuu sidaa caws.
Hooyadiisna waxay siddaa caws.
Waxay caawinaysaa Cumar.

cáws -ka (mass.) grass | gräs,
grässtrån, halm



Cumar wuxuu fuushan yahay
mundulka. Cawska ayuu saarayaa
saqafka. Wuu ku dhaqsanayaa.
Roobka ayuu ka baqayaa.

dhaqsadaa / dhaksadaa, -sataa,
progr. -sánayaa is hurrying |
skyndar sig
róob -ka rain | regn

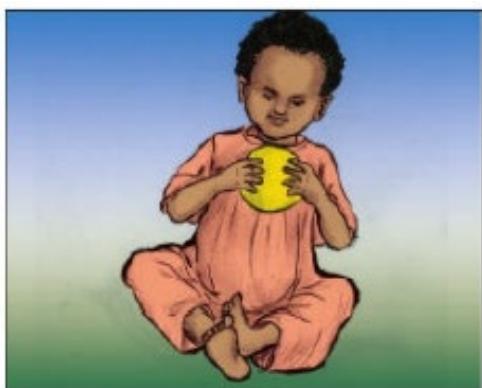


Cumar wuxuu dhammeeyay
mundulkiiisii. Ma rabo in ay biyo
u soo galaan. Biyaha ayuu
ka moosayaa mundulka.

dhammeeyaa finishes | gör färdig
biyó -ha (only pl.) water | vatten
soó (adv.) towards (a place) | mot
(en plats)
moosaa dams (up) | dämmer

Af Soomaali, Buugga 2aad, Muqdisho 1994: 184–186

5.3 Xaawo



Tani waa Xaawo. Xaawo waa gabar yar.



Xaawo waxay jeceshahay
in ay ku ciyaarto ciidda.

ciíd -da sand sand



Fiiри dharka Xaawo.
Dharkeeda waxa ka muuqda wasakh.

ká muuqdaa, muuqataa sth
shows, can be seen somewhere |
ngt syns någonstans
wasákh -da (Ar.) dirt | smuts



Hooyadeed maxaa ay doonaysaa
in ay samayso?

doónayaa (progr.) *wishes, wants
(to) | vill*



Marka hore waa ay u qubaynaysaa Xaawo.

ú qubeeyaa *washes, showers sb,
gives sb a bath | badar, duschar
ngn, ger ngn ett bad*



Waxa ay ka bilaabaysaa qubayska
timuheeda.

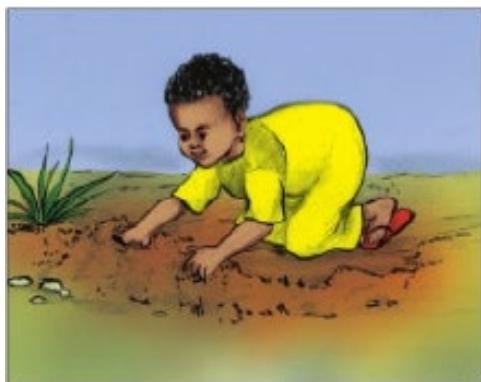
Waxa ay isticmaalaysaa saabuun iyo biyo.

ká bilaabaa *begins with, starts
with | börjar med*
qubáys -ka *bath, washing | bad,
tvätt*
tín -ta *a strand of hair | hårstrå*
timó -ha (pl.) *hair | hår*
isticmaalaa (Ar.) *is using |
använder*
saabuún -ta (Ar.) *soap | tvål*



Fiiri Xaawo hadda.
Timacheedu waa nadiif.
Jirkeedu waa nadiif.
Dharkeedu waa nadiif.

jídh^N / jír^S -ka body | kropp

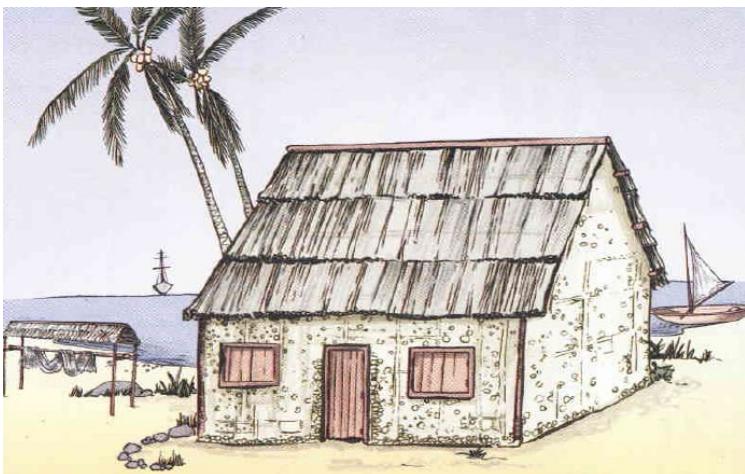


Xaawo halkee bay u socotaa?
Marka xigta maxaa dhici doona?

hál -ka place | plats
halkee? which place?, where? | var,
vart?
xigaa, xigtaa follows (after), comes
after | följer (efter), kommer efter
márka xiga / márka xigta after
that, then, thereafter | häرنäst
dhacaa, dhacdaa, inf. dhíci
happens, falls | händer; faller

Af Soomaali, Fasalka 2aad, Hargeysa 2010: 21–22

5.4 Saynab gurigooda



Kani waa Saynab gurigooda.
Qoyskoodu waa kalluumaysato.
Kalluumaysatadu waxa ay ku nool
yiihin badda agteeda.

Ma arki kartaa doonnida aabbaheed?
Ma arki kartaa shabakaddiisa?
Kalluumaysatadu waxa ay
adeegsadaan doonyaha iyo
shabakadaha si ay kalluunka u soo
dabtaan.

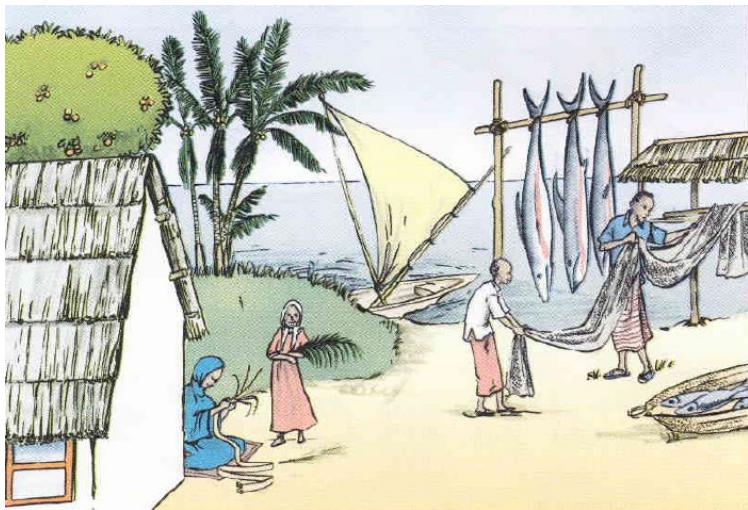
Sawir kalluumayste ku dhex jira
doonnidiisa.

kalluumaysáto -da (coll.)
fishermen | fiskare
nóol living | levande, boende

arkaa, aragtaa sees | ser
karaa, kartaa can | kan
doonní -da, pl. doonyó boat | båt
shabakád -da net | nät

kallúun -ka (mass.) fish | fisk

kallumaýste -ha fisherman |
fiskare
dhéx -da middle | mitten
ku dhex inside, in the middle of |
inuti, mitt i



Eeg sawirkan.

Maxaa ay labada nin samaynayaan?

Maxaa ka laallaada guriga agtiisa?

Kalluunka waxaa lagu qallajinayaa
qorraxda. Ka dibna kalluumaysatadu
waxa ay ku iibin doonaan suuqa.

laallaadaa *hangs, dangles | hänger,
dinglar*

qallajiyaa, -jisaa, progr. -jínayaa

sb dries sth | ngn torkar ngt

qorráx -da *sun | sol*

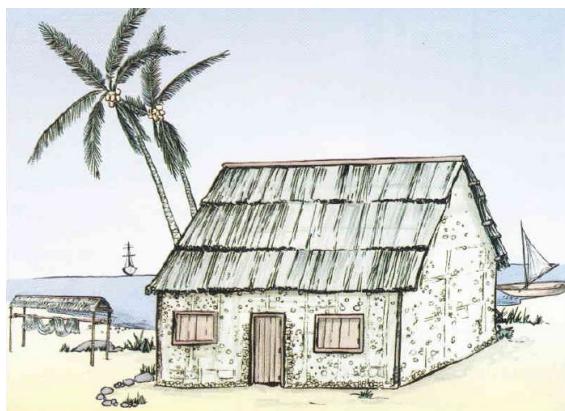
iibiyyaa, iibisaa *sells | säljer*

súuq -a *market | marknad*

doonaa *will | ska, kommer att*

Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 1aad, Muqdisho & Hargeysa 2001: 35–36

5.5 Alaabta lagu dhiso guriga kalluumaystaha



Eeg sawirkan guriga kalluumaystaha.

Waa maxay alaabta uu ka samaysan

yahay?

Derbiga waxa lagu dhisay ulo.
 Ulaha waxa lagu malaasay dhoobo.
 Saqafka waxa lagu dhisay ulo iyo
 caleen.

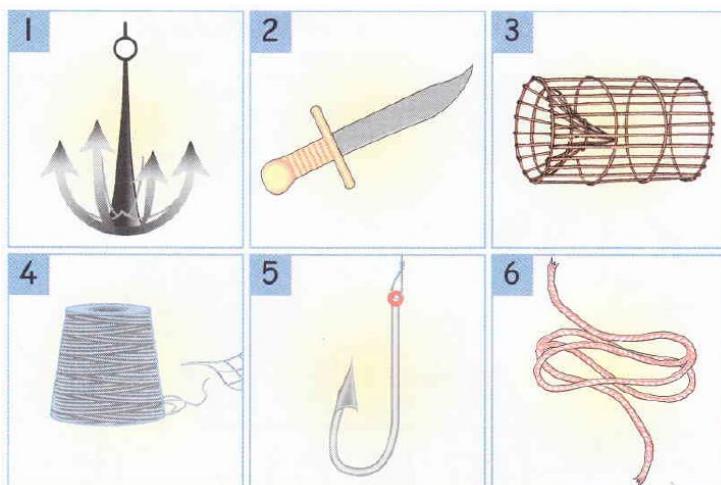
Waa maxay alaabta lagu dhisay
 gurigiinna?

dérbi -ga wall | mur, vägg
malaasaa covers, seals off, plasters |
 täcker (med lera), rappar
dhoóbo -da clay | lera
caleén -ta (mass.) leaves | löv, blad

Waxyabaha laga helo guriga
kalluumaystaha

U sheeg fasalka waxyabaha aad ku
 aragto sawirka.

aad you | du, ni



Maxaa waxyabahan loo adeegsadaa?
 Tus fasalka sida ay kalluumaysatadu u
 adeegsato shabakadda si ay ugu
 qabtaan kalluunka.

tusaa shows | visar
ugú < *ú+kú in (a manner) + with
 (a tool) | på (ett sätt) + med (ett
 redskap)
qabtaa, -bataa catches, seizes |
 fångar, griper

Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 1aad, Muqdisho & Hargeysa 2001: 37–38

5.6 Wadahadallo 31-32

31.0

- Xaggee baad ka timid?
- Waxaan ka imid Maraykanka.

timid *you came / have come*
(idiomatically: *come*) *du kom / har kommit* (idiomatiskt: *kommer*)

31.1

- Xaggee baad ka timid?
- Waxaan ka imid Maraykanka.
- Ma macallin baad tahay?
- Haa. Waxaan ahay macallin.

imid *I came / have come*
(idiomatically: *come*) *jag kom / har kommit* (idiomatiskt: *kommer*)

Maraýkanka *America | Amerika*

31.2

- Iska warran.
- Nabad.
- Xaggee baad ka timid?
- Soomaaliya baan ka imid.
- Ma Soomaaliya baad ku dhalatay?
- Haa.

31.3

- Ma nabad baa?
- Waa nabad.
- Xaggee baad ka timid?
- Waxaan ka imid Hargeysa.
- Ma ardayad baad tahay?
- Maya. Askariyad baan ahay.

32.0

- Xaggee baad ka timid?
- Waxaan ka imid Soomaaliya.
- Ma Soomaali baad tahay?
- Haa.
- Xaggee baad ku dhalatay?
- Waxaan ku dhashay Boorama.

32.1

- Ma Ingiriis baad tahay?
- Maya. Maraykan baan ahay.
- Ma Maraykanka baad ku dhalatay?
- Haahey, waxaan ku dhashay Maraykanka.

Maraýkan -ka *an American | amerikan*

haahey *yes, sure | javisst*
Beginning in Somali (1966: 79–84)

5. Erayo cusub

Quizlet 2.05, Somali-English: <https://quizlet.com/521138136/>

Quizlet 2.05, somaliska-svenska: <https://quizlet.com/521137940/>

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| baránayaa [ká] bilaábaya | <i>is learning</i> <i>is beginning, is starting</i> [with] | <i>lärt sig</i> <i>börjar [med]</i> |
| biyó (f. pl. tant.) | <i>water</i> | <i>vatten</i> |
| Carábi (m.) | <i>Arabic, the Arabic language</i> | <i>arabiska (språket)</i> |
| cáws (m.) | <i>grass</i> | <i>gräs, grässtrån, halm</i> |
| ciíd (f.) | <i>sand</i> | <i>sand</i> |
| dhacaa, dhacdaa, inf. dhíci | <i>happens, falls</i> | <i>händer; faller, ramlar</i> |
| dhakhsánayaa / dhaqsánayaa | <i>is hurrying</i> | <i>skyndar sig</i> |
| dhammeeyaa | <i>finish</i> | <i>gör färdig</i> |
| doónayaa | <i>wishes, wants (to)</i> | <i>vill</i> |
| hád (f.) | <i>moment (in time)</i> | <i>tidpunkt</i> |
| hádda | <i>now</i> | <i>nu</i> |
| hál (m.) | <i>place</i> | <i>plats</i> |
| halkeé? | <i>which place?, where?</i> | <i>var, vart?</i> |
| isticmaálayaa (Ar.) | <i>is using</i> | <i>använder</i> |
| jídh^N / jír^S (m.) | <i>body</i> | <i>kropp</i> |
| márka xigá / márka xigtá | <i>after that, then, thereafter</i> | <i>härnäst</i> |
| miisaámayaa, miisaámaysaa (Ar.) | <i>(someone) is weighing (some- thing)</i> | <i>väger</i> |
| moósayaa | <i>is damming (up)</i> | <i>dämmer</i> |
| múndul (m.) | <i>hut</i> | <i>hydda</i> |
| muuqdaa, muuqataa | <i>shows, can be seen</i> | <i>syns</i> |

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| [ú] qubaýnayaa | <i>is washing, showering [somebody], is giving [somebody] a bath</i> | <i>badar, duschar [ngn], ger [ngn] ett bad</i> |
| qubáys (m.) | <i>bath, washing</i> | <i>bad, tvätt</i> |
| róob (m.) | <i>rain</i> | <i>regn</i> |
| saabuún (f.) (Ar.) | <i>soap</i> | <i>tvål</i> |
| soó (adv.) | <i>(movement) towards (somebody)</i> | <i>förflyttar sig i riktning till en plats</i> |
| timó (f. pl.) | <i>hair</i> | <i>hår</i> |
| tín (f.) | <i>a strand of hair</i> | <i>hårstrå</i> |
| wasákh (f.) (Ar.) | <i>dirt</i> | <i>smuts</i> |
| weédh^N/weér^S (f.) | <i>sentence, clause</i> | <i>mening</i> |
| xigaa, xigtaa | <i>follows (after), comes after</i> | <i>följer (efter), kommer efter</i> |

5. Naxwe

The plural of feminine nouns

Group 1. Nouns in **-o** are feminine. In the plural they end in **-oýin**. The definite form ends in **-da** in the singular and in **-oýinka** in the plural.

magaálo *city | stad*
magaaláda
magaaloóyin
magaaloóyinka

Group 4. All other feminine nouns take the plural ending **-ó**. The corresponding definite plural always ends in **-áha**.

meél *place | plats*
meésha
meeló
meeláha

Substantiv på **-o** är feminina. I plural slutar de på **-oýin**. Bestämd form slutar alltid på **-da** i singular och på **-ka** i plural.

tíro *number | tal, antal*
tiráda
tiroóyin
tiroóyinka

Alla andra feminina substantiv får i plural ändelsen **-ó**. Bestämd form plural slutar alltid på **-áha**.

bisád *cat | katt*
bisáddá
bisadó
bisadáha

daaqád *window | fönster*
daaqádda
daaqadó
daaqadáha

muraayád *pane | glasruta*
muraayádda
muraayadó
muraayadáha

jiingád *corrugated metal sheet | korrugeterad plåt*
jiingádda
jiingadó
jiingadáha

If the stem ends in **-m-**, that fact remains hidden in the singular, since /m/ may only occur if it is followed by a vowel. The real stem is only visible in the plural.

Om ordets stam slutar på **-m-** så syns det inte i singular, eftersom /m/ bara kan förekomma före vokal. I plural ser man dock den verkliga stammen.

weydiín *question | fråga*
weydiínta
weydiimó
weydiimáha

tín *(a strand of) hair | hårstår*
tínta
timó
timáha

Irregular feminine nouns

doonní *boat | båt*
doonnída
doonyó
doonyáha

The plural of masculine nouns

Group 5.
Most masculine nouns that do not end in **-e** in the singular form their plural with the ending **-yó**. and definite form **-yáda**.

Grupp 5.
De flesta maskulina substantiv som inte slutar på **-e** i singular, bildar plural med ändelsen **-ó**. och betämd form **-yáda**.

mágac *name | namn*
mágaca
magacyó
magacyáda

If the stem ends in /y/ there will only be one **-y-**, since this consonant cannot be doubled in Somali.

éray *word|ord*

érayga

erayó

erayáda

Group 5b.

If the stem ends in /b/, /d/, /r/, /l/, /n/, /m/, but not /g/, that consonant is doubled instead of the /y/

gidáar *wall|mur, vägg*

gidáarka

gidaarró

gidaarráda

baabúur *car|bil*

baabúurka

baabuurró

baabuurráda

Om stammen slutar på /y/ får pluralformen bara ett **-y-** eftersom denna konsonant aldrig kan dubbleras.

Grupp 5b.

Om stammen slutar på /b/, /d/, /r/, /l/, /n/, /m/, men inte /g/, dubbleras denna konsonant i stället för /y/.

sáwir *picture|bild*

sáwirka

sawirró

sawirráda

Irregular masculine nouns, Group 4a (-ó, -áha)

gúri *house|hus*

gúriga

guryó

guryáha

wáx *thing|sak*

wáxa

waxyaabó

waxyaabáha

walaál *sibling|syskon*

walaálka *the brother|brodern*

walaásha *the sister|systern*

walaaló *siblings|syskon*

walaaláha

Contracted sentence particles

In a less formal style it is very common to contract the sentence particle with the short subject pronoun. Some examples:

| |
|---------------|
| waa uu -> wuu |
| waa ay -> way |
| baa uu -> buu |
| baa ay -> bay |

| |
|-------------------------|
| waxa uu -> wuxuu |
| waxa ay -> waxay |
| ayaa uu -> ayuu |
| ayaa ay -> ayay |

Nouns without a singular form

Two Somali nouns exist only in the plural¹ without having a plural meaning.

| | |
|--------|----------------|
| biyó | water vatten |
| biyáha | |

Both these nouns are so called mass nouns. The English words *oats*, *cereals*, *ashes* behave similarly. They are plural only in these specific meanings.

I vardaglig stil drar man väldigt ofta ihop satspartiklarna med de korta subjektspronomenen. Några exempel:

| | |
|---------|--------------|
| caanó | milk mjölk |
| caanáha | |

Att de är plural märks på att verb och subjektspronomen står i plural då de är subjekt i en sats.

Demonstrative kii / tii

The pronoun **kíí**, **tií** *that* and **kúwii** *those* as well as the endings **-kii** / **-tii** indicate something that constitutes **common background knowledge**.

This ending may also be added after the possessive endings, and after a consonant it is reduced to just **-ii**.

Pronomenen **kií**, **tií** *den där* och **kúwii** *de där* samt ändelserna **-kii** / **-tii** anger något som utgör en **gemensam bekant bakgrundsinformation**.

Denna ändelse kan även läggas till efter de possessiva ändelserna och blir då efter konsonant bara **-ii**.

¹ That these forms are really plural can be deduced from the fact that the verb is always in the plural in clauses where these nouns function as the subject. Also, if they were singular forms they would be feminine and take the definite ending **-da**. They would then also frequently be stressed on the penult vowel position in the indefinite form, like **hoóyo** *mother*, **hooyáda**.

Cumar wuxuu dhammeyay mundulkii**sii**.

Omar has finished **his** hut, **you know**.

Omar har gjort färdig **sin** hydda, **du vet**.

Aspect

The simple aspect form **doonaa, doontaa** *will* is used as the auxiliary for the future tense.

Den enkla aspektens **doonaa, doontaa** *kommer att* används som hjälpverb i futurum.

Márka xigta maxáa dhíci doona? *WHAT will happen next?*

the.instant following what.FOC happen will

VAD kommer att hända härnäst?

The progressive aspect forms **doónayaa, doónaysaa** *wants, intends* is a main verb and it requires a full subordinate clause beginning with **ín** *that*.

Den progressiva aspektens **doónayaa, doónaysaa** *vill, anser, tänker* används som modalt verb.

Hooyadeéd maxáa ay doónaysaa ín ay samayso?

her.mother what.FOC she wants that she do.SUBJUNCTIVE

WHAT IS IT her mother wishes to do? / wants / intends to do?

VAD ÄR DET hennes mamma vill göra? / tänker göra?

Distant assimilation

When the infinitive ending **-i** is added to a verb with a stem in /ax/ or /ac/, the vowel in the stem usually becomes similar to the vowel in the ending.

dhacaa *happens* | *händer*

När man lägger infinitivändelsen **-i** till ett verb med en stam som slutar på /ax/ eller /ac/ brukar vokalen i ändelsen "smitta av sig" på det föregående /a:/et.

/dhac/ + /i/ > **dhíci** *happen* | *hänta*

Focused subject

If the subject of a clause is focused with **baa, ayaa** or **waxa(a)**, short subject pronouns cannot be used and the verb takes the reduced form.

Om satsens subjekt är fokuserat med **baa, ayaa** eller **waxa(a)** får man inte använda något subjektspronomen och verbet står i reducerad form.

Márka xigta maxáa dhíci doona? *WHAT will happen next?*

VAD kommer att hända härnäst?

NB! maxáa < maxaý + baa

Obs! maxáa < maxaý + baa

Dhárkeeda waxa ká muuqda wasákh.

her.clothes FIN.FOC from shows dirt

Her clothes look DIRTY. | Hennes kläder ser SMUTSIGA ut.

Notice that **wasákh** is a noun in Somali. Lägg också märke till att det blev ett It is the subject of the clause, and it is substantiv på somaliska som mot-focused by **waxa**. Read the glossing line svarighet till ett adjektiv i svenska backwards!

Overview of endings added to nouns

| | definite | close | distant | known |
|------------------------------|------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| base form grundform | -ka | -kan | -kaas | -kii |
| | -ta | -tan | -taas | |
| subject form subjektsform | -ku | -kani | -kaasi | -tii |
| | -tu | -tani | -taasi | |
| | bestämdhet | närhet | avstånd | något bekant |

The Infinitive

The infinitive is used with at handful of auxiliary verbs, such as **doonaa** *will*, **karaa** *can, may...*

Stem ending in consonant: the infinitive is formed by adding -i.

weeraraa, weerartaa, weerar! *attacks, attack!*

weerari karaa *can/may attack*

Stem ending in vowel: the infinitive is formed by adding -n.

iibiyaa, iibisaa, iibi! *sells, sell!*

iibin doonaa *will sell*

5. Layliyo

Online: [VM 36.1 Questions and answers with 'joogaa'](#)

Online: [VM 36.2 Questions and answers with 'joogaa'](#)

Online: [VM 36.3 Statements with 'joogaa'](#)

Online: [VM 36.4 Questions with 'joogaa'](#)

5. Tone-marked texts

<https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455526>

5. Translations

Maxaa ay samaynayaan?

What are they doing?

Vad gör de?

Waxa ay miisaamaysaa buug.

She is weighing a book.

Hon väger en bok.

Waxa uu akhrinayaan buug.

He is reading a book.

Han läser en bok

Waxa ay baranaysaa Carabi.

She is learning Arabic.

Hon lär sig arabiska. Hon pluggar arabiska.

Waxa uu sawirayaan shimbir.

He is drawing a bird.

Han ritar en fågel.

Waxa ay akhrinaysaa Qur'aan.

She is reading the Qur'an.

Hon läser Koranen.

Waxa uu firinayaan geed.

He is looking at a tree.

Han tittar på ett träd / en växt.

Fiiri sawirradan.

Look at these pictures.

Titta på de här bilderna.

Maxaa ay Faadumo, Caasho iyo Xasan samaynayaan hadda?

What are Fadumo, Asha and Hassan doing now?

Vad för Faduma, Asha och Hassan nu?

Ka qor afar weerood.

Write four sentences **about it**.

Skriv fyra meningar **om det**.

The preposition *ka* refers back to something previously mentioned. It could of course be the three children (write about them), but it seems more probable that it is *what they are doing* (write about it), since the focus in the preceding clause is on *maxaa?*.

Cumar mundulkisii

Omar's hut (you know)

Omars hydda (du vet)

Cumar wuxuu rabaa in uu dhiso mundul.

Omar wants to build a hut.

Omar vill bygga en hydda.

Wuxuu sidaa caws.

He carries grass/straw.

Han bär gräs/halm.

The basic meaning of ‘caws’ is ‘grass’, but it is often thicker than the kind of grass that most people in Europe will think of spontaneously. Therefore it might be easier to understand the situation if ‘caws’ is translated as En. ‘straw’ or Sw. ‘halm’.

Hooyadiisna waxay siddaa caws.

And his **also** mother carries grass/straw.

Och hans mamma bär också gräs/halm.

Waxay caawinaysaa Cumar.

She is helping Omar.

Hon hjälper Omar.

Cumar wuxuu fuushan yahay mundulka.

Omar is sitting on top of the hut. (lit. is mounted)

Omar sitter uppe på hyddan. (eg. är uppkrupen, uppklätttrad)

Cawska ayuu saarayaq saqafka.

He is putting the grass/straw on the roof.

Han lägger gräset/halmen på taket.

Wuu ku dhaqsanayaa.

He is hurrying.

Han skyndar sig, / Han har bråttom.

Roobka ayuu ka baqayaa.

He is afraid of the rain.

Han är rädd för regnet.

Cumar wuxuu dhammeeyay mundulkisii.

Omar has finished his hut (you know).

Omar har gjort färdig sin hydda (du vet).

Ma rabo in ay biyo **u so** galaan.

He doesn't want water to get **in there**.

(lit. He doesn't want that water goes **into it**.)

Han vill inte att vatten ska rinna **in där**.

(eg. Han vill inte att vatten går **in i den**.)

The preposition ‘u’ means ‘to, into’ and refers to a nouns. But the nouns is not present in this sentence, it is ‘mundulkisii’ in the preceding sentence that it refers to. In English and Swedish there is a pronoun ‘it’ to solve the situation, but Somali doesn’t have (or need) such a pronoun. The preposition is enough. In English and Swedish it is often also possible to render such ‘lone’ prepositions with ‘there/där’.

‘Soo’ refers to a motion towards a goal.

Biyaha **ayuu ka** moosayaa mundulka.

He is damming the water away **from** the hut.

Han dämmer undan vatnet **från** hyddan.

ayuu = ayaa uu

ayaa puts focus/emphasis on *biyaha*.

Xaawo

Tani waa Xaawo.

This is Hawo.

Detta är Hawa.

Xaawo waa gabar yar.

Hawo is a little girl.

Hawa är en liten flicka.

Xaawo waxay jeceshahay in ay ku ciyaarto ciidda.

Hawo loves to play in the sand/with the sand.

Hawa älskar att leka i sanden/med sanden.

Fiiri dharka Xaawo.

Look at Hawo's clothes.

Titta på Hawas kläder.

Dharkeeda waxa ka muuqda wasakh.

Her clothes look dirty.

(lit. From her clothes dirt is visible.)

Hennes kläder ser smutsiga ut.

(eg. Från hennes kläder syns smuts.)

Hooyadeed maxaa ay doonaysaa in ay samayso?

What does her mother intend to do?

Vad vill/tänker hennes mamma göra?

Here, the progressive doonaysaa is used. It gives the clause a nuance of intention, that she wishes to do something.

sameyn doontaa ‘will do | kommer att göra, ska göra’

doonaysaa in ay samayso ‘wants to do, intends to do | vill göra, tänker göra, avser att göra’

Marka hore waa ay u qubaynaysaa Xaawo.

First of all, she is giving Hawo a bath.

Först ska hon tvätta / bada Hawa / ge Hawa ett bad.

Waxa ay ka bilaabaysaa qubayska timaheeda.

She is beginning by washing her hair.

Hon börjar med att tvätta hennes hår.

Waxa ay isticmaalaysaa saabuun iyo biyo.

She is using soap and water.

Hon använder tvål och vatten.

Fiiri Xaawo hadda.

Look at Hawo now.

Titta på Hawa nu.

Timaheedu waa nadiif.

Her hair is clean.

Hennes hår är rent.

Jirkeedu waa nadiif.

Her body is clean.

Hennes kropp är ren.

Dharkeedu waa nadiif.

Her clothes are clean.

Hennes kläder är rena.

Xaawo halkee bay u socotaa?

Where is Hawo going?

Vart är Hawa på väg?

Marka xigta maxaa dhici doona?

What will happen next?

Vad kommer att hända härnäst?

Saynab gurigooda

Kani waa Saynab gurigooda.

This is Saynab's home.

Detta är Saynabs hus.

Qoyskoodu waa kalluumaysato.

Her family are fishermen.

Hennes familj är fiskare.

Kalluumaysatadu waxa ay ku nool yihiin badda agteeda.

The fishermen live near the sea.

Fiskare / Fiskarna bor nära havet / i närheten av havet.

Ma arki kartaa doonniida aabbaheed?

Can you see her father's boat?

Kan du se hennes pappas båt?

Ma arki kartaa shabakaddiisa?

Can you see his net?

Kan du se hans nät?

Kalluumaysatadu waxa ay adeegsadaan doonyaha iyo shabakadaha si ay kallunku u soo dabtaan.

The fishermen use the boats and the nets (in order) to catch the fish.

(lit.so that they catch the fish.)

Fiskarna använder båtarna och näten för att fånga fisk.

Sawir kalluumayste ku dhex jira doonniidiisa.

Draw a fisherman sitting inside his boat.

Rita en fiskare som sitter (mitt i, inuti) i sin båt.

Eeg sawirkan.

Look at this picture.

Titta på den här bilden.

Maxaa ay labada nin samaynayaan?

What are the two men doing?

Vad gör de två männen?

Maxaa ka laallaada guriga agtiisa?

What is hanging beside the house?

Vad (är det som) hänger i närheten av huset?

Kallunku waxaa lagu qallajinayaa qorraxda.

The fish is drying in the sun.

(lit. One/They are drying the fish in the sun.)

Man torkar fisk(en) i solen / med (hjälp av) solen.

Ka dibna kalluumaysatadu waxa ay ku iibin doonaan suuqa.

And after that, the fishermen will sell it in the market.

Och sedan kommer fiskarna att sälja den på marknaden.

The object pronoun ‘it/den’ doesn’t exist in Somali. If you want to sell, you have to sell something, and that is evident from the context in Somali.
Hence, it must be the fish.

Alaabta lagu dhiso guriga kalluumaystaha

The materials for building a fisherman's house.

(lit. The stuff one builds the fisherman's house with)

De grejer man bygger en fiskarstuga med

Here, it is not a specific house that is referred to, but this type of house in general. Somali prefers the definite form ‘guriga’, whereas Swedish and English rather prefer the indefinite, but could use the plural instead.

Eeg sawirkan guriga kalluumaystaha.

Look at this picture of the/a fisherman's house.

Titta på den här bilden av fiskarstugan/en fiskarstuga.

Waa maxay alaabta uu ka samaysan yahay?

What are the things (the stuff) it is made of?

Vad (Vilka) är sakerna som det är gjort av?

Derbiga waxa lagu dhisay ulo.

The wall was built with sticks. (lit. ...one has built with...)

Väggen (muren) är byggd av/med pinnar.

(eg.har man byggt)

Ulaha waxa lagu malaasay dhoobo.

The sticks were covered with clay. (lit. ... one has covered with...)

Pinnarna har man täckt med lera.

Saqafka waxa lagu dhisay ulo iyo caleen.

The roof was built with sticks and leaves. (lit. ... one has built...)

Taket har man byggt med pinnar och blad.

Waa maxay alaabta lagu dhisay gurigiinna?

Which materials was your home built with? (lit. ... has one built with...)

Vad är grejerna som man har byggt ert hus av/med?

Vilka grejer är ert hus byggt av?

Waxyabaha laga helo guriga kalluumaystaha

The items to be found in the/a fisherman's home. (lit. ... items one finds ...)

De saker man hittar i en fiskarstuga.

U sheeg fasalka **waxyabaha** aad ku aragto sawirka.

Tell the class **the items** you see in the picture.

Tell the class **what items** you see in the picture.

Berätta för klassen **de saker** du ser på bilden.

Berätta för klassen **vilka saker** du ser på bilden.

Somali subclauses don't start with question words in the way that is common in English and Swedish.

59. Maxaa waxyabahan loo adeegsadaa?

What are these items used for?

What does one use these items for?

Vad använder man de här sakerna till?

60. Tus fasalka **sida** ay kalluumaysatadu **u** adeegsato shabakadda si ay **ugu** qabtaan kalluunka.

Show the class **the way** the fishermen use the net **in** (in order) to catch the fish **with**.

Show the class **how** the fishermen use the net to catch the fish.

Show the class **how** fishermen use nets to catch fish.

Visa klassen **sätten** fiskarna använder nätet **på** för att fånga fisken **med**.

Visa klassen **hur** fiskare använder nät för att fånga fisk.

See comment 58 above.

Also notice that speaking very generally, not about any specific fishermen or net or fish, the definite form of all nouns is used in Somali, whereas Swedish and English might prefer indefinite plural.

31.2

1. – Iska warran.

How do you do?

Hur är det med dig?

2. – Nabad.

Good

Bra.

3. – Xaggee baad ka timid?

Where are you from?

Varifrån är du?

4. – Soomaaliya baan ka imid.

I'm from Somalia

Jag är från Somalia.

Notice that the two previous sentences are in the past tense in Somali: Where have you come from. I have come from Somalia.

5. – Ma Soomaaliya baad ku dhalatay?

Were you born in Somalia?

Är du född i Somalia.

In this question, English and Somali use past tense, whereas Swedish uses present tense.

6. – Haa.

Yes.

Ja.

32.1

7. – Ma Ingiriis baad tahay?

Are you from England? Are you English/British?

Är du engelsman / britt?

8. – Maya. Maraykan baan ahay.

No. I'm from America. I'm American.

Nej, jag är amerikan.

9. – Ma Maraykanka baad ku dhalatay?

Were you born in America?

Är du född i USA / Amerika?

10. – Haa hey, waxaan ku dhashay Maraykanka.

Yes, I was born in America.

Ja, jag är född i USA / Amerika.

5. Key to exercises

Cutubka 6aad

Sound Recordings: <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455527>

6.1 Xubnaha Qoyskeenna



Aniga magacaygu waa Cabdi.
Waxa aan ahay arday.
Qoyskeennu waa qoys tiro yar.



Tani waa hooyadey Sahra.



Kani waa aabbahey Geeddi.



Tani waa walaashey Safiya.



Kani waa walaalkey Khaalid.

Qoyskeennu waxa uu ka kooban yahay
aabbe, hooyo iyo laba carruur ah oo
ay dhaleen, waana qoys tiro yar.

ah (reduced) that is, that are, being
som är

Cilmiga Bulshada 2, Muqdisho 2018: 1–2

6.2 Qoys Ballaaran



Qoyskeennu waa qoys ballaaran.



Magacaygu waa Maryan.



Qoyskeennu waxa uu ka kooban yahay
aabbe, hooyo, aniga iyo walaashey.



Kani waa awoowahey Faarax.
Waa aabbahey aabbihii.



Tani waa ayeyadey Dhooll.
Waa aabbahey hooyadii.



Tani waa eeddadey Safiya.
Waa aabbahey walaashiis.

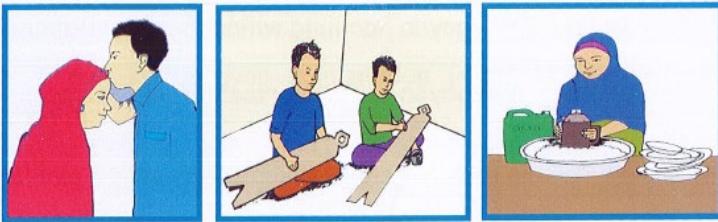


Kani waa abtigey Axmed.
Waa hooyadey walaalkeed.

Tirada qoyskeenu waa siddeed qof.

Cilmiga Bulshada 2, Muqdisho 2018: 5–6

6.3 Kaalinta Carruurta



Magacaygu waa Cumar.

Walaalahey waxa ay ixtiraamaan
waalidkeenna.

Carruurteennu waxa ay u kaalmeeyaan
waalidkeenna.

Carruurteennu waxa ay u adeegaan
hooyo iyoaabbo.

Waxa ay kaalmeeyaan walaalaheenna
waaweyn.

Waxa ay u naxariistaan walaalaheenna
yaryar.

Carruurteennu wax bay bartaan.

Maryan waxa ay kaalmaysaa
hooyadeen.

Waxa ay la qabataa shaqada guriga.

Qof kasta oo naga mid ahi waxa uu
leeyahay kaalin.

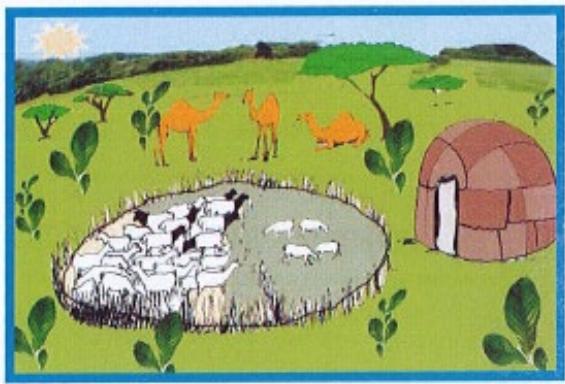
Waxa aan jecel nahay dhammaan
goyskeenna.

Qoyskeenna waxaa ka dhexeeya
shaqada gurigeenna.

Qof kastaa waxa uu ka shaqeeyaa
horumarinta midnimada qoyskeenna.

Cilmiga Bulshada 2, Muqdisho 2018: 15

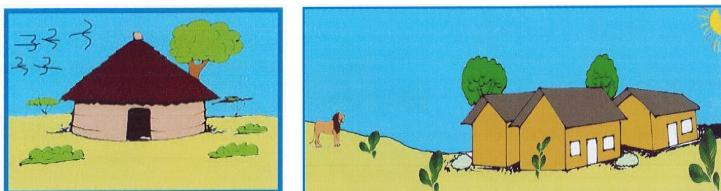
6.4 Muhiimmadda Guriga



Magacaygu waa Maxamed.

Waxa aan ahay arday dhigta
fasalka 2aad.

Gurigeennu waa meesha aannu
ku nool nahay, aniga, waalidkeenna
iyo walaalahey.



Muhiimmadda gurigu inoo leeyahay
waxa ka mid ah:

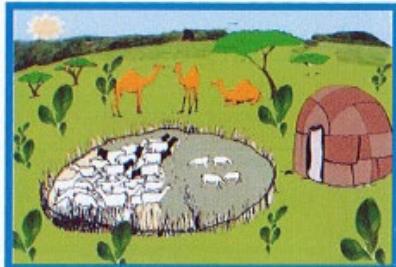
- Waxa aynu ka galnaa qorraxda.
- Waxa aynu ka galnaa roobka.
- Waxa aynu ka galnaa bahallada
kala duwan.

Cilmiga Bulshada 2, Muqdisho 2018: 19

6.5 Noocyada Guryaha

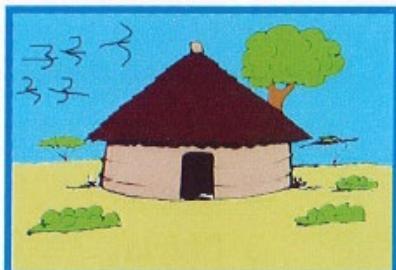
Noocyada guryaha deegaankeenna
Soomaaliyeed waa badan yihiin.

yihiin *they are | de är*

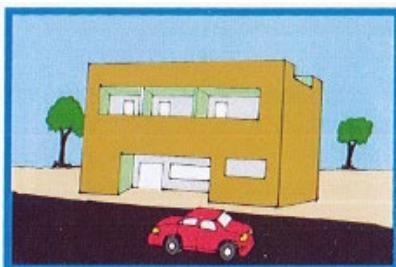


Kani waa aqal-Soomaali.
Waxaa dhista reer-miyiga.

reér -ka (coll.) (*extended family | storfamilj, släkt*)
reer-míyi -ga (coll.) (*rural people | landsbygdsbefolkning*)



Kanina waa mundul.
Waxaa dhista beeraleyda.



Kanina waa guri magaalo.
Waxaa dhista dadka magaalada
deggan.

dád -ka (coll.) *people | folk*

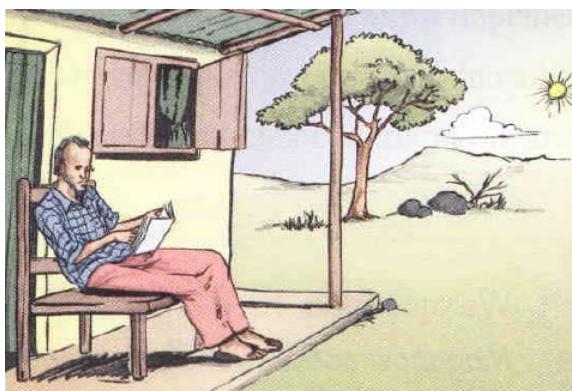
Cilmiga Bulshada 2, Muqdisho 2018: 22

6.6 Waxtarka guriga

Maxaa ay qabanaysaa gabadha ka muuqata sawirku? Wixa ay ku ordaysaa guriga. Gurigu waxa uu dadka ka celiyaa roobka.

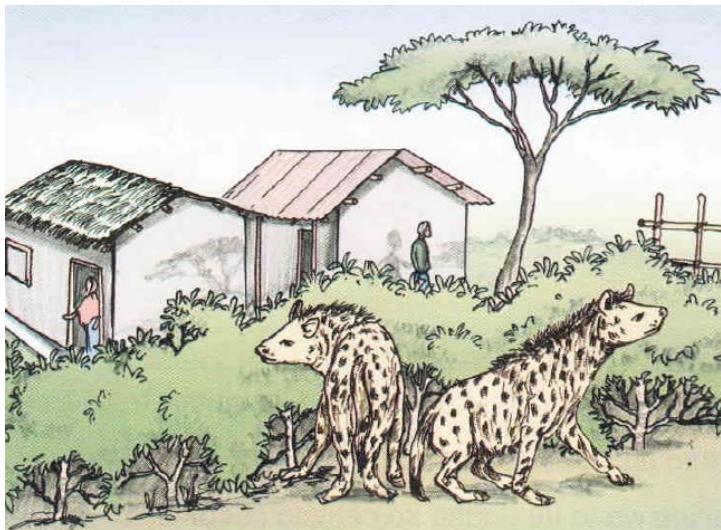
waxtar -ka benefit, use, usefulness |
nytta

celiyaa, celisaa holds back, protects
| håller borta, skyddar



Kani waa nin. Wixa uu ku nasanayaa barandaha gurigiisa. Dibeddu waa qorrax. Gurigu waxa uu dadka ka celiyaa qorraxda.

nastaa, -sataa, progr. -sánayaa
rests | vilar
baránde -ha / barándo -da porch |
veranda
dibéð -da outside, outdoors | ute,
utanför, utomhus



Dibedda gurigan waxaa jooga waraabayaal. Waraabayaashu waa ay **weerari karaan** carruurta. Gurigu waxa uu dadka ka celiyaa dugaagga halista ah.

Magacow saddex shay oo ay guryuhu ka celiyaan dadka.

waraábe -ha *hyena*

weeraraa *attacks* | *attackerar*
dugáag -ga (coll.) *wild animal(s)* |
vilddjur
halís -ta *danger, risk* | *fara, risk*

magaców (imp.) *tell the name,*
mention | *nämnn*
sháy -ga (Ar.) = waláx -da = wax -a
thing | *sak*

Cilmiga Bulshada, Fasalka 1aad, Muqdisho & Hargeysa 2001: 39–40

Wadahadallo 32–33

32.2

- Ma Soomaali baad tahay mise Xabashi?
- Xabashi ma ihi. Waxaan ahay Soomaali.
- Ma waxaad ku dhalatay Afgooye?
- Maya. Berbera baan ku dhashay.

Xabáshi -ga *an Abyssinian,*
Ethiopian | *abessinier, etiopier*

32.3

- Caliyow. Xaggee baad ka timid?
- Boorama baan ka imid.
- Ma Boorama baad ku dhalatay?
- Haa.
- Ma askari baad tahay?
- Maya. Milatari baan ahay.

milatári -ga soldier, officer | militär

33.0

- Ma magaalo baad ku nooshahay?
- Maya. Wuxaan ahay reer-miyi.

nooshahay < *nool+tahay

33.1

- Maxaad sheegtay?
- Nabad. Iska warran.
- Nabad.
- Ma magaalaad ku nooshahay?
- Maya. Wuxaan ahay reer miyi.

33.2

- Caasha, xaggee baad ku dhalatay?
- Wuxaan ku dhashay Baraawe.
- Ma reer-miyi baad tahay mise reer-magaal?
- Reer-magaal baan ahay.

reer-magáal -ka (coll.) urban
people | stadsbefolking

33.3

- Ma miyi baad ku nooshahay?
- Haa, reer-miyi baan ahay.
- Ma Muqdisho baad ku dhalatay mise miyi?
- Miyi baan ku dhashay.

Beginning in Somali (1966: 84–88)

6. Erayo cusub

Quizlet 2.06, Somali-English:

Quizlet 2.06, somaliska-svenska:

| | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| aad | <i>you</i> | <i>du, ni</i> |
| ah | <i>that is, that are, being</i> | <i>som är</i> |
| baránde (m.) | <i>porch</i> | <i>veranda</i> |
| caleén (f.mass.) | <i>leaf</i> | <i>löv, blad</i> |
| celiyaa, celisaa, celínayaa | <i>holds back, protects</i> | <i>håller borta, skyddar</i> |
| dád (m.coll.) | <i>people</i> | <i>folk</i> |
| dérbi (m.) | <i>wall</i> | <i>mur, vägg</i> |
| dhéx (f.) | <i>middle</i> | <i>mitt</i> |
| dhoóbo (f.) | <i>clay</i> | <i>lera</i> |
| dibéd (f.) | <i>outside, abroad</i> | <i>ute, utanför, utomlands</i> |
| doonni (f.), pl. doonyó | <i>boat</i> | <i>båt</i> |
| dugáag (m.) | <i>wild animal(s)</i> | <i>vilddjur</i> |
| halís (f.) | <i>danger, risk</i> | <i>fara, risk</i> |
| iibiyyaa, iibisaa, iibínayaa | <i>sells</i> | <i>säljer</i> |
| laallaadaa, laallaadda, | <i>hangs, dangles</i> | <i>hänger, dinglar</i> |
| laallaádayaa | | |
| magacow (imp.) | <i>tell the name, mention</i> | <i>näm</i> |
| malaasaa, malaastaa, | <i>covers, seals off, plasters</i> | <i>täcker (med lera), rappar</i> |
| malaásayaa | | |
| nastaa, nasataa, | <i>rests</i> | <i>vilar</i> |
| nasánayaa | | |
| qabtaa, qabataa, | <i>catches, seizes</i> | <i>fångar, griper</i> |
| qabánayaa | | |
| qallajiyaa, qallajisaa, | <i>dries</i> | <i>torkar</i> |
| qallajínayaa | | |
| qorráx (f.) | <i>sun</i> | <i>sol</i> |
| shabakád (f.) | <i>net</i> | <i>nät</i> |
| sháy (m.) = wax | <i>thing</i> | <i>sak</i> |
| tusaa, tustaa, túsayaa | <i>shows</i> | <i>visar</i> |
| ugú < ú + kú | <i>in (a manner) + with (a tool)</i> | <i>på (ett sätt) + med (ett redskap)</i> |
| waraábe (m.) | <i>hyena</i> | <i>hyena</i> |
| wáxtar (m.) | <i>benefit, use, usefulness</i> | <i>nytta</i> |
| weeraraa, weerartaa, | <i>attacks</i> | <i>attackerar</i> |
| weerárayaan | | |
| yihiiin | <i>they are</i> | <i>de är</i> |

6. Exercises

Online: [VM 37.1 Translate clauses with 'joogaa'](#)

Online: [VM 37.2 Negative present tense forms](#)

Online: [VM 38.1 Questions and negative answers.](#)

Online: [VM 38.2 Positive and negative statements](#)

6. Translate into Somali

The following sentences are all quite similar to each other.

They consist of a subject and a verb, and most of them also contain an object or an adverbial complement after the verb. Only a couple don't.

The most neutral way of translating sentences where there is a noun phrase after the verb is to use the focus particle **waxa** which puts the final noun phrase in focus, meaning that it is emphasized or put in the foreground of what is happening, e.g.

Sahro ◊ **waxa ay** ◊ **cunaysaa** ◊ **tufaax**. *Sahra is eating an APPLE.*

Axmed ◊ **waxa uu** ◊ **sawirayaa** ◊ **geed**. *Ahmed is drawing a TREE.*

The sign ◊ singles out the constituent phrases.

In sentences where there is no noun phrase after the verb, the sentence particle **waa** will normally be used as the most neutral way of rendering this type of clause.

Macallimaddu ◊ **waa ay** ◊ **qoslaysaa**. *The teacher is LAUGHING.*

Don't forget to use the subject ending **-u** where necessary.

And don't forget to put the obligatory short subject pronoun after the particle **waxa** or **waa**.

1. I go to the Sheikh Bashir school. / Jag går i Schejk Bashir-skolan.
2. Ahmed is looking at a small bird. / Ahmed tittar på en liten fågel.
3. Sahra is reading a book. / Sahra läser en bok.
4. Amina likes cars. / Amina gillar bilar.
5. Sahra is playing football. / Sahra spelar fotboll.
6. Sahra likes football. / Sahra gillar fotboll.
7. Her friend has a nice bike. / Hennes vän har en fin cykel.
8. Sahra has fallen. / Sahra har ramlat.
9. The doctor is looking at Sahra's foot. / Doktorn tittar på Sahras fot.
10. Omar is running. / Omar springer.
11. I see three houses. / Jag ser tre hus.
12. I have a good bike. / Jag har en bra cykel.
13. He has one daughter. / Han har en dotter.
14. Faduma and Maryan are sleeping. / Faduma och Maryan sover.

6. Tone-marked texts

<https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455527>

6. Translations

Xubnaha Qoyskeenna

The members of our family

Medlemmarna i vår familj

Aniga iyo qoyskeenna

Me and my family (lit. our family)

Jag och min familj (eg. vår familj)

Aniga magacaygu waa Cabdi.

MY name is Abdi.

JAG heter Abdi.

Aniga is used to additionally emphasize the identity of the owner.

Cf. **Iyada magaceedu...** *HER name...* in the dialogues 6.1, 6.2, 7.3.

Waxa aan ahay arday.

I am a student.

Jag är elev.

Qoyskeennu waa qoys tiro yar.

My family is a small family.

Min (eg. vår) familj är liten (till antalet).

Tani waa hooyadey Sahra.

This is my mother Sahra.

Detta är min mamma Sahra.

Kani waa aabbahey Geeddi.

This is my father Gedi.

Detta är min pappa Gedi.

Tani waa walaashey Safiya.

This is my sister Safia.

Detta är min syster Safia.

Kani waa walaalkey Khaalid.

This is my brother Khaled.

Detta är min bror Khalid.

Qoyskeennu waxa uu ka kooban yahay aabbe, hooyo, iyo labo carruur ah oo ay dhaleen, waana qoys tiro yar.

My family consists of father, mother and two children of their own (lit. that they have given birth to), and/so it is a small family.

Min (vår) familj består av pappa, mamma och två egna barn (eg. som de fött / satt till världen), och/så det är en liten familj (till antalet).

oo ay dhaleen *that they have given birth to* - is used to emphasise that these are their own children, not e.g. nieces or nephews that they are taking care of or have “adopted” due to different circumstances.

By the way: the number of siblings is actually inconsistent. Abdi first tells us that he has both a brother and a sister, but then that his parents only have two children...

Qoys Ballaaran

A large family

Qoyskeennu waa qoys ballaaran.

My (our) family is a large family.

Min (vår) familj är stor (eg. omfattande)

Magacaygu waa Maryan

My name is Maryan.

Jag heter Maryan.

Qoyskeennu waxa uu ka kooban yahay aabbe, hooyo, aniga iyo walaashey.

My (our) family consists of father, mother, me and my sister.

Min (vår) familj består av pappa, mamma, mig och min syster.

Kani waa awoowahey Faarax.

This is my grandfather Farah.

Detta är min farfar Farah.

Waa aabbahey aabbihii.

He's my father's father. (lit. He is my father his father.)

Han är min pappas pappa.
Tani waa ayeeyadey Dhool.
This is my grandmother Dhool.
Detta är min farmor Dhool.
Waa aabbahey hooyadii.
She's my father's mother. (lit. She is my father his mother.)
Hon är min pappas mamma.
Tani waa eeddadey Safiya.
This is my aunt Safia.
Detta är min faster Safia.
Waa aabbahey walaashii.
She's my father's sister. (lit. She is my father his sister.)
Hon är min pappas syster.
Kani waa abtigey Axmed.
This is my uncle Ahmed.
Detta är min morbror Ahmed.
Waa hooyadey walaalkeed.
He's my mother's brother. (He is my mother her brother.)
Han är min mammas bror.
Tirada qoyskeenu waa siddeed qof.
My family consists of eight people. (lit. The number of our family is eight persons)
Antalet i vår familj är åtta personer.

Kaalinta Carruurta

The role of the children
Barnens roll
Magacaygu waa Cumar.
My name is Omar.
Jag heter Omar.
Walaalahey waxa ay ixtiraamaan waalidkeenna.
My siblings show our parents respect .
Mina syskon visar respekt mot våra föräldrar.
Carruurteennu waxa ay u kaalmeeyaan waalidkeenna.
We children (lit. our children) support our parents.
Vi barn (eg. våra barn) stöttar (är ett stöd för) våra föräldrar.
Carruurteennu waxa ay u adeegaan hooyo iyo aabbe.
We children serve mom and dad.
Vi barn utför tjänster åt mamma och pappa.
Waxa ay kaalmeeyaan walaalaheenna waaweyn.
They help/support their (lit. our) older siblings.
De hjälper sina (eg. våra) äldre syskon.
Waxa ay u naxariistaan walaalaheenna yaryar.
They are nice to their (lit. our) younger siblings.
De är snälla mot sina (eg. våra) yngre syskon.
Carruurteennu wax bay bartaan.
Our children / We children learn things.
Våra barn lär sig saker. / Vi barn lär oss saker.
Maryan waxa ay kaalmaysaa hooyadeen.
Maryan helps her (lit. our) mother.
Maryan hjälper (vår) mamma.

Waxa ay **la** qabataa shaqada guriga.

She does the housework together **with her**.

Hon gör hushållsarbete tillsammans **med henne**.

Notice the preposition **la with**, meaning that the girl does the work together with somebody. That must be mother, judging from the preceding sentence.

Qof kasta oo naga mid ahi waxa uu leeyahay kaalin.

Each of us has a role to play.

Var och en av oss har en/sin roll.

[**qof kasta oo na-ga mid ah**]-i

[person every that us from one is]-subject

every person that is one of us

Notice how this whole phrase is the subject of the rest:

SUBJECT <**waxa uu**> leeyahay <**kaalin**>

It is therefore marked with the subject marker suffix **-i**.

Waxa aan jecel nahay dhammaan qoyskeenna.

We are fond of / love all of our family.

Vi tycker om / älskar hela vår familj.

Qoyskeenna waxa ka dhxeeeya shaqada gurigeenna.

Our family is united by the housework. / The housework unites our family.

Vår familj knyts samman av hushållsarbetet. / Hushållsarbetet förenar vår familj.

Qof kastaa waxa uu ka shaqeeyaa horumarinta midnimada qoyskeenna.

Everyone is working to promote the unity of our family.

Var och en arbetar för främjandet av sammanhållningen i vår familj.

Cutubka 2aad. Guriga

Chapter 2. At home / The home.

Kapitel 2. Hemmet.

Muhiimada guriga

The importance of the home

Hemmets betydelse / Vikten av ett hem

Magacaygu waa Muxammed.

My name is Muhammed.

Jag heter Muhammed.

Waxa aan ahay arday dhigta fasalka 2aad

I'm a pupil (studying) in second grade.

Jag är elev (som går) i andra klass.

Dhigta *studying* is a reduced present tense form. The reduced form is used to modify the preceding noun.

In English and Swedish, a phrase beginning with a preposition can directly function as a modifier of another noun: *a pupil + in second grade*. Since Somali prepositions must be followed by a verb, a verb with a rather “obvious” meaning is often used in this kind of phrases. Therefore it's not always necessary to translate the verb into English and Swedish, if it doesn't really add any information. Every pupil studies, that's what it is about to be a pupil. Languages may even use different such “filling” words, and Swedish favours *goes*, ‘går i andra klass’.

Gurigeennu waa meesha aannu ku nool nahay, aniga, waallidkeenna iyo walaalahay.

Our home is the place where we live, me, my (our) parents and my siblings.

Vårt hem är den plats där vi bor, jag, mina (våra) föräldrar och mina syskon.

Muhiimadda gurigu inoo leeyahay waxa ka mid ah:

The importance that the house has for us includes:

The importance that the home has for us is among other things:

Den betydelse som huset har för oss innehåller:

Den betydelse som hemmet har för oss är bland annat:

Guriga waxa aynu ka galnaa qorraxda.

We go inside the house (to get away) from the sun.

Vi går inomhus (för att komma) undan solen.

Guriga waxa aynu ka galnaa roobka.

We go inside the house (to get away) from the rain.

Vi går inomhus (för att komma) undan regnet.

Guriga waxa aynu ka galnaa bahallada kala duwan.

We go inside the house (to get away) from different wild animals.

Vi går inomhus (för att komma) undan olika vilda djur.

Noocyada Guryaha

Types of houses

Typer av hus

Noocyada guryaha deegaankeenna Soomaaliyed waa badan yihiin.

The types of houses in our Somali (community) environment are several.

Typerna av hus i vår somaliska boendemiljö är många.

deegaankeenna Soomaaliyed *our Somali community, settlement, environment.* This is a broader concept conveying all the regions inhabited by Somalis.

Kani waa aqal-Soomaali.

This is a traditional Somali house.

Detta är ett traditionellt somaliskt hus.

Waxaa dhista reer-miyiga.

It's built by rural people. / They are built by rural people.

Sådana bygger landsbygdsbefolkningen.

The form **dhista** is the reduced present tense of the verb **dhistaa, dhisataa** *builds for oneself.* It has to be the reduced form since the subject of the clause, the last word, is focused through the use of **waxaa**.

Kanina waa mundul.

And this is a hut.

Och detta är en hydda.

Waxaa dhista beeraleyda.

It's built by farmers. / They are built by farmers.

Sådana bygger bönderna.

Again a focused subject with a reduced verb form in the predicate.

Kanina waa guri magaalo.

And this is an urban house.

Och detta är ett hus i stan.

Waxaa dhista dadka magaalada deggan.

It's built by people living in the city / city residents.

Sådana bygger folk som bor i stan.

Again a focused subject with a reduced verb form in the predicate.

Waxtarka guriga

The use(fulness) of a house / houses.

Nyttan med ett hus / nyttan med hus.

The definite form **guriga** *the house* refers to house(s) in general, or the prototypical house. It is best rendered in Swedish and English with an indefinite noun, either in the singular or in the plural.

Maxaa ay qabanaysaa gabadha ka muuqata sawirku?

What is the girl seen in the picture doing?

Vad gör flickan som syns på bilden?

Waxa ay ku ordaysaa guriga.

She is running to the house.

Hon springer till / mot huset.

Gurigu waxa uu dadka ka celiyaa roobka.

The house protects the people from the rain.

(lit. The house keeps the rain away from the people.)

Huset skyddar människorna mot regnet.

(eg. Huset håller regnet borta från människorna.)

Kani waa nin.

This is a man.

Detta är en man.

Waxa uu ku nasanayaa barandaha gurigiisa.

He is resting on the porch of his house.

Han vilar på verandan utanför sitt hus.

Dibeddu waa qorrax.

Outside it is sunny.

Ute är det sol.

Gurigu waxa uu dadka ka celiyaa qorraxda.

The house protects the people from the sun.

Huset skyddar folk mot solen.

Dibedda gurigan waxaa jooga waraabayaal.

Outside this house there are hyenas.

Utanför huset finns det hyenor.

Waraabayaashu waa ay weerari karaan carruurta.

The hyenas can attack the children.

Hyenorma kan anfalla barnen.

Gurigu waxa uu dadka ka celiyaa dugaagga halista ah.

The house protects the people from the dangerous wild animals.

The house keeps the dangerous wild animals away from the people.

Huset skyddar människorna från de farliga vilda djuren.

Huset håller de farliga vilda djuren borta från människorna.

Magacow saddex shay oo ay guryuhu ka celiyaan dadka.

Name three things that the houses protect the people from.

Nämnn tre saker som hus(en) skyddar människor(na) emot.

33.3

– Ma miyi baad ku nooshahay?

Do you live on the countryside?

Bor du på landet?

– Haa, reer-miyi baan ahay.

Yes, I'm a rural person.

Ja, jag är landsbygdsbo.

– Ma Muqdisho baad ku dhalatay mise miyi?

Were you born in Mogadishu or on the countryside?

– Är du född i Mogadishu eller på landet?
– Miyi baan ku dhashay.

I was born on the countryside.
Jag är född på landet.

6. Solutions

The sign Ø means that the phrase may be omitted (i.e. the field may be left empty).

It is of course always possible to write <ey> instead of <ay> in every word where this diphthong occurs, i.e at the end of a word or when followed by a consonant. Statistically, however, <ay> is more common in almost all words.

According to the instructions you were supposed to use the particle **waxa** or **waa**, but since it is of course also possible to use **ayaa/baa**, I have included those solutions as well at the end of this document.

1. I go to the Sheikh Bashir school. || Jag går i Schejk Bashir-skolan.

| | | | |
|------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ø Anigu | waxa aan waxaan | aadaa dhigtaa <i>study</i> | dugsiga Sheekh Bashiir. |
|------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|

2. Ahmed is looking at a small bird. || Ahmed tittar på en liten fågel.

| | | | |
|-------|------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Axmed | waxa uu wuxuu | fiirinayaa eegayaa | shimbir yar. |
|-------|------------------|-----------------------|--------------|

3. Sahra is reading a book. || Sahra läser en bok.

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------|-------------|-------|
| Sahra Sahro | waxa ay waxay | akhrinaysaa | buug. |
|----------------|------------------|-------------|-------|

4. Amina likes cars. | Amina gillar bilar.

| | | | |
|--------|---------|------------|--------------|
| Aamina | waxa ay | jeceshahay | baabuurrada. |
| Aamino | waxay | | baabuurta. |

This is a general reference to the whole category of cars. Therefor the definite form is more natural in Somali than the indefinite form.

5. Sahra is playing football. | Sahra spelar fotboll.

| | | | |
|-------|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| Sahra | waxa ay | ciyaaraysaa | kubbadda cagta. |
| Sahro | waxay | dheelaysaa | banooni. |

When two nouns are combined to denote an object or a notion, they are practically always in the definite form (**kubbadda cagta**), even if the meaning is not definite, and the corresponding one word expression **banooni** is in the indefinite form.

6. Sahra likes football. || Sahra gillar fotboll.

| | | | |
|-------|---------|------------|-----------------|
| Sahra | waxa ay | jeceshahay | kubbadda cagta. |
| Sahro | waxay | | |

7. Her friend has a nice bike. || Hennes vän har en fin cykel.

| | | | |
|--|------------------|----------------------|---|
| Saaxiibteed Saaxiibaddeed <i>female friend</i> | waxa ay waxay | leedahay haysataa | baaskiil fiican. baaskiil wanaagsan. |
| Saaxiibkeed <i>male friend</i> | waxa uu wuxuu | leeyahay haystaa | |

Since the possessive ending is attached to a word denoting a close relation, the ending should be of the short type, without the final **-a/-u**. In colloquial Somali this is however not always the case.

Somali has two different verbs for have: **leeyahay**, **leedahay** *has, owns*, and **haystaa**, **haysataa** *has, holds*. The first puts emphasis on the fact that somebody is the owner of something, the second on the fact that somebody has something to their disposal (even if it is somebody else's property).

8. Sahra has fallen. || Sahra har ramlat.

| | | | |
|-------|--------|---------|--|
| Sahra | waa ay | dhacday | |
| Sahro | way | | |

9. The doctor is looking at Sahra's foot. || Doktorn tittar på Sahras fot.

| | | | |
|--------------|------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Dhakhtarku | wuxuu waxa uu | fiirinayaa eegayaa | cagta Sahra. cagta Sahro. Sahra cagteeda. Sahro cagteeda. |
| Dhakhtaraddu | waxay waxa ay | fiirinaysaa eegaysaa | |

HaBiT: dhakhtar.* = 2856 hits // dhaqtar.* = 802 hits.

10. Omar is running. || Omar springer.

| | | | |
|-------|---------------|----------|--|
| Cumar | waa uu wuu | ordayaa. | |
|-------|---------------|----------|--|

11. I see three houses. || Jag ser tre hus.

| | | | |
|-------|----------|---------|--------------|
| Ø | waxa aan | arkayaa | saddex guri. |
| Anigu | waxaan | arkaa | saddex aqal. |

NB. For masculine nouns, their singular form is used as their counting form after numerals.

In some Somali regions, certain verbs, such as **arkaa** and **hurdaa**, are seldom used in the progressive form.

12. I have a good bike. || Jag har en bra cykel.

| | | | |
|------------|--------------------|---------------------|---|
| Ø Anigu | waxa aan waxaan | leeyahay haystaa | baaskiil fiican. baaskiil wanaagsan. |
|------------|--------------------|---------------------|---|

13. He has one daughter. || Han har en dotter.

| | | | |
|------------|------------------|----------|--|
| Ø Isagu | waxa uu wuxuu | leeyahay | hal gabar. hal gabadh. hal inan. |
|------------|------------------|----------|--|

14. Faduma and Maryan are sleeping. || Faduma och Maryan sover.

| | | |
|--|---------------|------------------------|
| Faaduma iyo Maryan Faadumo iyo Maryan | waa ay way | hurdayaan. hurdaan. |
|--|---------------|------------------------|

The Somali verb **hurda** ‘sleep’ is often used in the simple aspect instead of the progressive, if there is a broader time perspective than only the present moment. One could also say that ‘sleep’ is perceived more as a state, than as an activity.

According to the instructions you were supposed to use the particle **waxa** or **waa**, but since it is of course also possible to use **ayaa/baa**, I have included those solutions as well at the end of this document.

It would also be possible to focus the subject, but those solutions are not shown here.

Solutions with **ayaa/baa** focusing the object or adverbial phrase:

1. I go to the Sheikh Bashir school. || Jag går i Schejk Bashir-skolan.

| | | | |
|------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------|
| Ø Anigu | dugsiga Sheekh Bashiir | ayaa aan ayaan | aadaa. |
|------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------|

| | | | |
|--|--|-----------------|--|
| | | baa aan baan | |
|--|--|-----------------|--|

When **Sheekh Bashiir** is the first modifier following the head noun **dugsiga**, it is added directly: **dugsiga Sheekh Bashiir**, but if there is another modifying word before it, the conjunction **ee** has to be inserted: **dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir**

2. Ahmed is looking at a small bird. || Ahmed tittar på en liten fågel.

| | | | |
|-------|-------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Axmed | shimbir yar | ayaa uu ayuu baa uu buu | fiirinayaa. eegayaa. |
|-------|-------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|

3. Sahra is reading a book. || Sahra läser en bok.

| | | | |
|----------------|------|----------------------------------|--------------|
| Sahra Sahro | buug | ayaa ay ayay baa ay bay | akhrinaysaa. |
|----------------|------|----------------------------------|--------------|

4. Amina likes cars. || Amina gillar bilar.

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------|
| Aamina Aamino | baabuurrada baabuurta | ayaa ay ayay baa ay bay | jeceshahay. |
|------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------|

5. Sahra is playing football. || Sahra spelar fotboll.

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| Sahra Sahro | kubbadda cagta | ayaa ay ayay | ciyaaraysaa. |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|

| | | | |
|--|--|---------------|--|
| | | baa ay bay | |
|--|--|---------------|--|

6. She likes football. || Sahra gillar fotboll.

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|----------------------------------|-------------|
| Sahra Sahro | kubbadda cagta | ayaa ay ayay baa ay bay | jeceshahay. |
|----------------|----------------|----------------------------------|-------------|

7. Her friend has a nice bike. || Hennes vän har en fin cykel.

| | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| Saaxiibteed Saaxiibaddeed | baaskiil fiican baaskiil wanaagsan | ayaa ay ayay baa ay bay | leedahay. |
| Saaxiibkeed | | ayaa uu ayuu baa uu buu | leeyahay. |

9. The doctor is looking at Sahra's foot. || Doktorn tittar på Sahras fot.

| | | | |
|--------------|--|----------------------------------|--------------|
| Dhakhtarku | cagta Sahra cagta Sahro Sahra cagteeda Sahro cagteeda | ayaa uu ayuu baa uu buu | fiirinayaa. |
| Dhakhtaraddu | | ayaa ay ayay | fiirinaysaa. |

| | | | |
|--|--|---------------|--|
| | | baa ay bay | |
|--|--|---------------|--|

11. I see three houses. || Jag ser tre hus.

| | | | |
|------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Ø Anigu | saddex guri saddex aqal | ayaa aan ayaan baa aan baan | arkayaa. arkaa. |
|------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|

12. I have a good bike. || Jag har en bra cykel.

| | | | |
|------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| Ø Anigu | baaskiil fiican baaskiil wanaagsan | ayaa aan ayaan baa aan baan | leeyahay. |
|------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|

13. He has one daughter. || Han har en dotter.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| Ø Isagu | hal gabar hal gabadh hal inan | ayaa uu ayuu baa uu buu | leeyahay. |
|------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|

14. Faduma and Maryan are sleeping. || Faduma och Maryan sover.

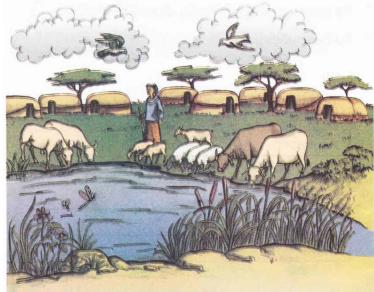
| | | |
|--|---------------|------------------------|
| Faaduma iyo Maryan Faadumo iyo Maryan | waa ay way | hurdaan. hurdayaan. |
|--|---------------|------------------------|

Cutubka 7aad

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455528>

7.1 Biyo

Maxaa aad ku arki kartaa sawirka?



Maxaa ay u yimaaddeen meeshan
reer-miyiga, xayawaannada iyo
shimbiruhu?

Biyuhu waa muhiim.

Biyo-la'aan ma noolaan karno.

Biyaha waxaa laga helaa meelo badan.

aad (pron.) you | du, ni

maxáa ... ú what for, why | för vad,
varför

ay (pron.) she, it; they | hon, den,
det; de

yimaaddaa, timaaddaa comes |
kommer

míyi -ga countryside | landsbygd
reer-míyi -ga rural people |
landsbygdsbefolkning

xayawáan -ka (Ar.) animal | djur
muhiim -ka (Ar.) an important
thing | ngt viktigt

la'aán -ta lack, without | avsaknad;
utan

noolaán < *nool+ahaan to be alive,
to live | vara levande, leva

lagá < *la+ka one ... from | man ...
från

helaa, heshaa finds, gets | hittar,
får

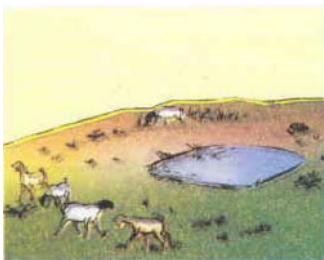
7.2 Isticmaalka biyaha

Eeg sawirradan.

Maxaa aynu u isticmaalnaa biyaha?

isticmáal -ka (Ar.) use, usage |
användning

aynu (pron.) we (including the
listener) | vi (inklusive lyss-
naren)



Biyaha waxa aynu u isticmaalnaa
cabbitaan.

cabbitaan -ka beverage, drink |
dryck



Waxa aan u isticmaalnaa
wax-ku-karinta.

aan (pron.) I, we jag, vi

karín -ta cooking, to cook | *kokning, att koka*



Waxa aan u isticmaalnaa
wax-ku-maydhidda.

maydhíd / mayríd -da washing, to
wash | *tvättning, att tvätta*



Waxa aan u isticmaalnaa
ku-waraabinta dhirta.

waraabín -ta watering, to water |
vattning, att vattna
dhír -ta (mass) plants växter



Waxa aan u isticmaalnaa walxo badan.

waláx -da, pl. walxó -ha *thing | sak, föremål*

Halkee ayaa aynu ka helnaa biyaha?

7.3 Ilaha biyaha



Qoysaska qaar waxa ay biyaha
ka helaan balliyada.

qáar -ka *part | del
bálli -ga pond, pool, puddle | damm*

Waxa ay ku soo dhaansadaan
jirikaanno.

dhaansadaa, -sataa *fetches water |
hämtar vatten
jírikáan^N / jírigáan^S -ka (En.)
jerrycan | dunk*



Qoysaska qaar waxa ay biyaha ka
helaan matoorrada gacanta.

matóor -ka *pump
gacán -ta, pl. gacmó -áha hand,
arm*

Waxa ay ku soo dhaansadaan
jirikaanno.



Reer-miyigu waxa ay biyaha ka helaan balliyada.

Waxa ay biyaha ku rartaan awrtooda.

rartaa, rarataa *loads | lastar*
awr -ta (coll.) *pack camels*
lastkameler



Qoysaska qaar waxa ay biyaha ka iibsadaan biyoolaha.

Waxa ay ku kaydsadaan foostoooyin **waaweyn**.

ká iibsadaa, -sataa *buys from sb | köper av ngn*
biyoóle -ha *water seller | vattenförsäljare*
kaydsadaa, -sataa *stores away | förvarar*
foósto / fuústo -da *barrel | tunna, fat*
waawéyn (distr.) *big, large | stora*



Qoysaska qaar waxa ay biyaha ka helaan qasabadaha.

Halkee buu **qoyskiinnu** ka helaa biyaha? Ku muuji sawir.

qasabád -da (Ar.) *pipe, tap | rörledning, kran*
muúji (imp.) *show | visa*
sáynis -ka (En.) *science (school subject) | naturorienterande ämnen*

Saynis, Fasalka 1aad. Hargeysa 2001: 38-41.

7.4 Xarfaha waaweyn

Ku bilow xaraf weyn marka aad
qorayso magac gaar ah.

Baro magacyada qoyska Faadumo!

Maxamed, Aamina, Faadumo, Xasan,
Caasho, Xaawo

xáraf -ka, pl. xarfó -ha (Ar.) *letter*
(of the alphabet) | *bokstav*

kú bilów (imp.) *begin with* | *börja*
med

márka *when* | *när*

mágac -a *name; noun namn; sub-*
stantiv

gáar -ka *a special thing* | *ngt*
särskilt

gáar ah *special, particular, private* |
särskild, speciell, privat

mágac gáar ah *proper noun* | *egen-*
namn

bartaa, barataa *learns* | *lär sig*

baró (imp.) *learn* | *lär dig*

7.5 Isku aaddi magacyada iyo sawirka!

Aamina, Xasan, Faadumo



aáddi (imp.) move, make sth go |
för

iskú < *is+ku together | tillsam-
mans

- Waa kuma kani?
- Waa



- Waa tuma tani?
- Waa



- Waa tuma tani?
- Waa

Maxamed, Xaawo, Caasho



Waa tuma tani?

Waa



Waa tuma tani?

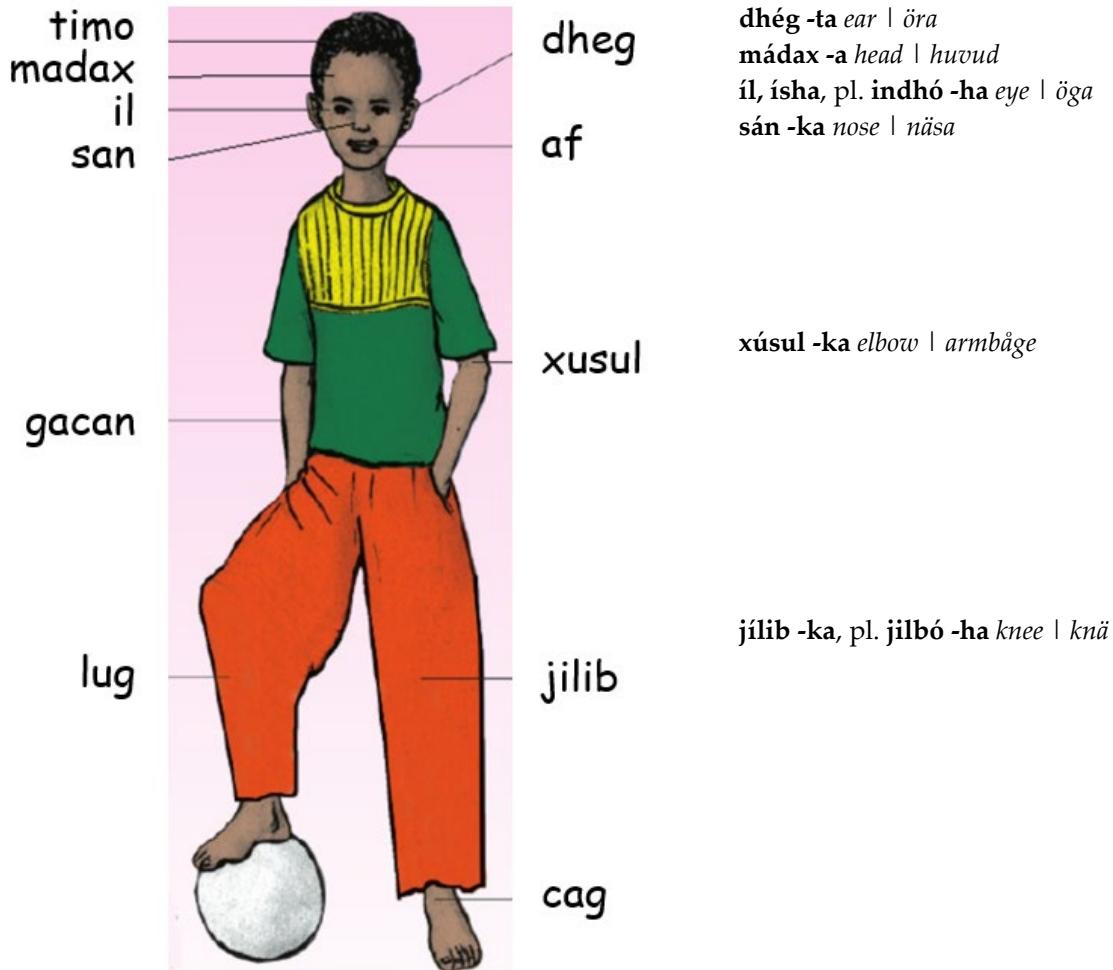
Waa



Waa kuma kani?

Waa

7.6 Fiiri Xasan



Tilmaan lugtiisa.
 Tilmaan gacantiisa.
 Tilmaan madaxiisa.
 Tilmaan afkiisa.
 Tilmaan jilibkiisa.
 Tilmaan sankiisa.
 Tilmaan cagtiisa.
 Tilmaan timahiisa.
 Tilmaan dhegtiisa.
 Tilmaan ishiisa.
 Tilmaan xusulkiisa.

tilmaamaa, tilmaantaa points at,
 shows | visar, pekar på
 lúg -ta, lugó -áha leg | ben
 gacán -ta, gacmó -áha arm, hand |
 arm, hand
 mádax -a, madaxyó -yáda head |
 huvud
 áf -ka, afáf -ka mouth | mun
 jílib -ka, jilbó -áha knee | knä
 sán -ka, sanán -ka nose | näsa
 cág -ta, cagó -áha foot | fot
 tín -ta, timó -áha strand of
 hair | hårstrå
 dhég -ta, dhegó -áha ear | öra
 íl, ísha, indhó -áha eye | öga
 xúsul -ka, xusulló, -láda elbow |
 armbåge

Immisa lugood ayaa uu leeyahay?
Immisa gacmood ayaa uu leeyahay?
Immisa madax ayaa uu leeyahay?
Immisa dhegood ayaa uu leeyahay?
Immisa xusul ayaa uu leeyahay?
Immisa jilib ayaa uu leeyahay?
Immisa indhood ayaa uu leeyahay?
Immisa san ayaa uu leeyahay?
Immisa cagood ayaa uu leeyahay?

7.7 Maxaa ay samaynayaan



Faadumo wejigeeda ayey dhaqaysaa.

wéji -ga *face | ansikte*
dhaqaa, dhaqdaa *washes | tvättar*



Aabbe waxa uu nadiifinayaan **ilkiiisa**.

ilig -ga, pl. ilkó -ha *tooth tand*



Hooyo waxa ay dhaqaysaa dhar.



Xasan waa uu shanlaysanayaan.

shanlaystaa, -sataa, -sánayaa
combs | kammar

Ka jawaab su'aalah!

su'aál -sha (Ar.) *question | fråga*

1. Maxaa ay samaynaysaa hooyo?
2. Maxaa uu samaynayaa aabbe?
3. Maxaa ay samaynaysaa Faadumo?
4. Maxaa uu samaynayaa Xasan?

Wadahadallo 34–35

34.0

- Raggaasi ma reer-miyi baa?
- Maya. Waa beeralay

rág -ga (coll.) *men* | *män*

beeraléy -da (coll.) *farmers* |
bönder, jordbrukare

34.1

- Ninkaasi ma reer-miyi baa?
- Maya. Waa macallin.
- Ma wuxuu ku dhashay Ceerigaabo?
- Haa. Wuxuu ku dhashay Ceerigaabo.

34.2

- Ma reer-miyi baa raggaasi?
- Maya. Waa beeralay.
- Ma reer Burco baa?
- Haa. Waa reer Burco.

reér Burco (coll.) *residents of Burao*
| *Burao-bor*

34.3

- Raggaasi ma reer-magaal baa?
- Haa. Waa reer-magaal.
- Ma beeralay baa?
- Haa. Waa beeralay.

35.0

- Ma magaalo bay ku nool yihiin?
- Haa. Afgooye bay ku nool yihiin.

yihiiñ *they are* | *de är*

35.1

- Raggaasi ma magaalo bay ku nool yihiin?
- Maya. Miyi bay ku nool yihiin.
- Ma Soomaali baa mise waa Sawaaxili?
- Sawaaxili weeye.

Soomaáli -ga *a Somali* | *en*
somalier

Sawaaxíli -ga *a Swahili speaker* |
en swahilitalare

Beginning in Somali (1966: 89–93)

7. Vocabulary

Quizlet 2.07, Somali-English: <https://quizlet.com/528613226/>

Quizlet 2.07, somaliska-svenska: <https://quizlet.com/386233978/>

7. Erayo cusub

| | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| áad (short subj.pron.) | <i>you</i> | <i>du, ni</i> |
| áaddi (imp.) | <i>move, transfer</i> | <i>för</i> |
| áan (short subj.pron.) | <i>I, we</i> | <i>jag, vi</i> |
| ah (reduced form) | <i>being, that is, which is</i> | <i>som är</i> |
| awr (f. coll.) | <i>pack camels</i> | <i>lastkameler</i> |
| áy [↑] (short subj.pron.) | <i>she, it, they</i> | <i>hon, den, det, de</i> |
| áynu [↑] (short subj.pron.) | <i>we (including the listener)</i> | <i>vi (inkluderar lyssnaren)</i> |
| bálli (m.) | <i>pond, pool, puddle</i> | <i>damm</i> |
| bartaa, barataa | <i>learns</i> | <i>lärt sig</i> |
| baró (imp.) | <i>learn</i> | <i>lärt dig</i> |
| bílow (m.) | <i>beginning</i> | <i>början</i> |
| bilów (imp.) | <i>begin</i> | <i>börja</i> |
| biyoóle (m.) | <i>water seller</i> | <i>vattenförsäljare</i> |
| cabbitáan (m.) | <i>beverage, drink</i> | <i>dryck</i> |
| dhaansadaa, dhaansataa | <i>fetches water</i> | <i>hämtar vatten</i> |
| dhaqaa [↑] , dhaqdaa | <i>washes</i> | <i>tvättar</i> |
| dhég (f.) | <i>ear</i> | <i>öra</i> |
| dhír (f. mass noun) | <i>plants</i> | <i>växter</i> |
| fár (f.) | <i>finger</i> | <i>finger; skrift</i> |
| foósto (fuústo) (f.) | <i>barrel</i> | <i>tunna, fat</i> |
| gáar (m.) | <i>a special thing</i> | <i>ngt särskilt</i> |
| gáar ah | <i>special, particular, private</i> | <i>särskild</i> |
| gacán (f.), pl. gacmó | <i>hand, arm</i> | <i>hand, arm</i> |
| helaa, heshaa | <i>finds, gets</i> | <i>hittar, får</i> |
| iibsadaa, iibsataa | <i>buys</i> | <i>köper</i> |
| ílig (m.), pl. ilkó | <i>tooth</i> | <i>tand</i> |
| íl (f.), pl. indhó | <i>eye</i> | <i>öga</i> |
| iskú (contr. of is + ku) | <i>together</i> | <i>tillsammans</i> |
| isticmáal (m.) (Arabic) | <i>use, usage</i> | <i>användning</i> |
| jawaáb (f.) (Arabic) | <i>answer</i> | <i>svar</i> |
| jirikáan ^N / jirigáan ^S (m.) (Eng. jerry can) | <i>jerrycan</i> | <i>dunk</i> |
| jílib (m.), pl. jilbó | <i>knee</i> | <i>knä</i> |
| karín (f.) | <i>cooking, to cook</i> | <i>kokning, att koka</i> |

| | | |
|---|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| kaydsadaa, kaydsataa | <i>stores away</i> | <i>förvarar</i> |
| la'aán (f.) | <i>lack, without</i> | <i>avsaknad; utan</i> |
| lagá (contr. of la + ka) | <i>one ... from</i> | <i>man ... från</i> |
| mádax (m.) | <i>head</i> | <i>huvud</i> |
| mágac (m.) | <i>name; noun</i> | <i>namn; substantiv</i> |
| mágac gáar ah | <i>proper noun</i> | <i>egennamn</i> |
| márka (introduces a subclause) | <i>when</i> | <i>när</i> |
| matóor (m.) | <i>pump</i> | <i>pump</i> |
| maxáa ... ú | <i>what for, why</i> | <i>varför, för vad</i> |
| maydhíd / mayríd (f.) | <i>washing, to wash</i> | <i>tvättning, att tvätta</i> |
| míyi (m.) | <i>countryside</i> | <i>landsbygd</i> |
| muhíim (m.) (Arabic) | <i>an important thing</i> | <i>ngt viktigt</i> |
| muúji (imp.) | <i>show</i> | <i>visa</i> |
| noolaán (< nool + ahaan) | <i>to be alive, to live</i> | <i>vara levande, leva</i> |
| qáar (m.) | <i>part</i> | <i>del</i> |
| qasabád (f.) (Arabic) | <i>pipe, tap</i> | <i>rörledning, kran</i> |
| rartaa, rarataa | <i>loads</i> | <i>lastar</i> |
| reer-míyi (m.) | <i>rural people</i> | <i>landsbygdsbefolkning</i> |
| sán (m.) | <i>nose</i> | <i>näsa</i> |
| sáynis (m.) (Eng. science) | <i>science (school subject)</i> | <i>naturorienterande ämnen</i> |
| shanlaysánayaa | <i>is combing</i> | <i>kammar</i> |
| soó socda[↑], soó socota (reduced form) | <i>following</i> | <i>följande, som följer</i> |
| su'aál (f.) (Arabic) | <i>question</i> | <i>fråga</i> |
| tilmáan (imp.) | <i>point at, show</i> | <i>visa, peka</i> |
| waawéyn (distributive form of wéyn) | <i>big, large</i> | <i>stora</i> |
| waláx (f.), pl. walkó | <i>thing</i> | <i>sak, föremål</i> |
| waraabín (f.) | <i>watering, to water</i> | <i>vattning, att vattna</i> |
| wéji (m.) | <i>face</i> | <i>ansikte</i> |
| xáraf (m.), pl. xarfó (Arabic) | <i>letter (of the alphabet)</i> | <i>bokstav</i> |
| xayawáan (m.) (Arabic) | <i>aminal</i> | <i>djur</i> |
| xúsul (m.) | <i>elbow</i> | <i>armbüge</i> |
| yimaaddaa (m.), timaaddaa (f.) | <i>comes</i> | <i>kommer</i> |

7. Naxwe

Plural and counting form

Review the **plural formation of nouns** in BSG § 6.4, as well as § 6.4.2 about the special sound alternations that occur in masculine nouns.

Some words have a stem that ends in two consonants. Such words insert an extra vowel in the singular, usually a copy of the vowel present in the stem. Read about this type of more **complicated plural forms** in BSG § 6.4.3 (a) & 6.4.3 (d).

íl *eye* (f.), ísha *the eye* has an irregular plural: **indhó** *eyes*, **indháha** *the eyes*.

Also review the counting form of nouns in BSG § 6.7.

Repetera **substantivens pluraländelser** i SNG § 6.4, liksom § 6.4.2 om de speciella ljudväxlingar som inträffar i maskulinum.

En del ord har en stam som slutar på två konsonanter. Sådana ord har en extra inskottsvokal i singular, vanligen en kopia av stammens vokal. Läs om sådana mera **komplicerade pluralformer** i SNG § 6.4.3 (a) and 6.4.3 (d)

Även i svenska har vi faktiskt precis samma fenomen i singular av ord som *cykl-ar*, *fingr-ar*, *fågl-ar*. Vi skjuter normalt in /e/, utom i ett fåtal fall, t.ex. *gaml-a*, där vi faktiskt verkar kopiera stammens vokal: *gammal*.

íl öga (f.), ísha ögat har oregelbunden plural: **indhó ögon**, **indháha ögonen**.

Repetera även substantivens räkneform i SNG § 6.7.

Regular verbs of the 1st conjugation

Review the simple form of verbs in the present tense, the past tense and the subjunctive mood.

Repetera verbens enkla former i presens, preteritum och konjunktiv.

| | PRESENT | PAST | SUBJUNCTIVE |
|----------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1 sg. | qoraa | qoray | qoro |
| 2 sg. | qortaa | qortay | qorto |
| 3 sg. m. | qoraa | qoray | qoro |
| 3 sg. f. | qortaa | qortay | qorto |
| 1 pl. | qornaa | qornay | qorno |

| | | | |
|-------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 2 pl. | qortaan | qorteen | qortáan |
| 3 pl. | qoraan | qoreen | qoráan |

3rd conjugation verbs

Review verbs with two stems. The consonant stem is used if the ending begins with a vowel, and the vowel stem is used if the ending begins with a consonant. In the **imperative** these verbs have a special vowel stem ending in **-ó** when no engin follows. (Cf. the alternation **o ~ a** in nouns like **hooyo**, **hooya-da**.)

Repetera verb med två stammar. Konsonantstam om ändelsen börjar med vokal, vokalstam om ändelsen börjar med konsonant. Sådana verb har i **imperativ** en vokalstam som slutar på **-ó** när ingen ändelse följer. (Jämför växlingen **o ~ a** i substantiv som **hooyo**, **hooya-da**.)

| | present | past | subjunctive |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| simple 1 sg. / 3 sg.m. | bart-aa | bart-ay | bart-ó |
| simple 2 sg. / 3 sg.f. | bara-taa | bara-tay | bara-tó |
| progr. 1 sg. / 3 sg.m. | bará-nay-aa | bará-nay-ay | bará-nay-o |
| progr. 2 sg. / 3 sg.f. | bará-nay-saa | bará-nay-say | bará-nay-so |
| | imperative | | |
| | baró | | |

Reduced verb forms

Somali has special verb forms that are used as modifiers of nouns. In the present tense such forms end in a short vowel, and there is no dedicated plural form. The same form is used for the plural as for the masculine singular.

Somaliskan har särskilda verbformer som används som attribut. Dessa slutar i presens på kort betonad vokal och det finns ingen särskild pluralform, samma form används i maskulinum singular och i plural.

| | | | |
|--------|---------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| m.sg. | soo socd-á | <i>that follows, following</i> | <i>som följer, följande</i> |
| f. sg. | soo socio-tá | | |
| pl. | soo socd-á | | |

These forms are called SHORT, REDUCED, ATTRIBUTIVE or RELATIVE verb forms.

Formerna kallas omväxlande KORTA, REDUCERADE, ATTRIBUTIVA eller RELATIVA

Their function often correspond to the PRESENT PARTICIPLE in European languages.

Notice that also this verb has two stems. The final vowel of the vowel stem is however not **-a-**, but a copy of the vowel in the verb's root.

Distant assimilation

Biyúhu *the water* and **shimbirúhu** *the birds* are the subject forms of **biyáha** and **shimbiráha**. Due to distant assimilation the /a/ before /h/ alternates with /u/ or /i/ when the ending immediately after /h/ contains a /u/ or /i/. See BSG § 4.2.1.

ilkáha *the teeth*, but **ilkíhiisa** *his teeth*, due to distant assimilation, see § 4.2.1.

Inclusive and exclusive 'we'

Review the **short subject pronouns** in BSG § 9.2. Notice the special INCLUSIVE form **aynu** in the 1st person plural.

In the Somali standard language there are (in a more elevated style) different 1st person plural pronouns depending on whether one wishes to include the listener(s) or not. In a more colloquial style, however, most Somali speakers don't make this distinction. Read more about **including and excluding pronouns** in BSG § 9.1.

verbformer. Funktionsmässigt motsvarar de många gånger PRESENS PARTICIP i europeiska språk.

Observera att även verbet ovan är ett verb med två stammar, men att vokalstammens slutvokal inte är **-a-**, utan vokalen kopieras från ordets rot.

Biyúhu *vatnet* och **shimbirúhu** *fåglarna* är subjektsformen av **biyáha** respektive **shimbiráha**. På grund av fjärrassimilation övergår /a/ före /h/ till /u/ resp. /i/ om ändelsen direkt efter /h/ innehåller /u/ eller /i/. Se SNG § 4.2.1.

ilkáha *tänderna*, men **ilkíhiisa** *hans tänder*, pga. fjärrassimilation, se § 4.2.1.

Repetera de **korta subjektspronomenen** i SNG § 9.2. Lägg märke till den särskilda INKLUDERANDE formen **aynu** i 1 person plural.

I det somaliska standardspråket har man (i högre stil) olika pronomer för 1 person plural beroende på om man inkluderar den/dem som man talar med eller inte. I mera vardagligt språk gör dock de flesta somalier inte denna distinktion. Läs mera om **inkluderande och exkluderande pronomer** i SNG § 9.1.

Somali nouns for English adverbs

Nouns dominate in Somali and correspond to many English pronouns and adverbs. Read more in BSG § 9.

Substantiven domineras i somaliskan och motsvarar många svenska pronom och adverb. Läs mer i SNG § 9.

| | | |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| sí | <i>manner, way</i> | <i>sätt</i> |
| sída | <i>the manner, the way, (like)</i> | <i>sättet (så som)</i> |
| sideé? | <i>which way?, how?</i> | <i>vilket sätt?, hur?</i> |
| hál | <i>place</i> | <i>plats</i> |
| hálka | <i>the place</i> | <i>platsen</i> |
| halkeeé? | <i>where?</i> | <i>var?, vart?</i> |
| kól | <i>moment, time</i> | <i>tidpunkt</i> |
| kólka | <i>the moment, the time</i> | <i>tidpunkten</i> |
| kólkaas | <i>that moment, then</i> | <i>då, (vid) den där tidpunkten</i> |

Irregular distributive form

waawéyn *big* is the irregular distributive form of the adjective **wéyn** *big*. Read more about the distributive form of adjectives in BSG § 10.2.1.

waawéyn *stora* är den oregelbundna distributiva formen av adjektivet **wéyn** *stor*. Läs mera om adjektivens distributiva form i SNG § 10.2.1.

Contractions

buu is an optional contraction of **baa uu** FOCUS + *he*, that is highly frequent in a casual or colloquial register.

buu är en frivillig sammandragning av **baa** FOKUS + **uu** *han*. Att dra samman dessa båda ord är det naturliga i talad somaliska.

lagá is an obligatory contraction of **la one** + **ká** *from, about*.

lagá är en obligatorisk sammandragning av **la man** + **ká från, om**.

7. Exercises

ONLINE [5.1 The plural and the definite form of nouns](#)

ONLINE [5.2 The plural and the definite form of nouns](#)

ONLINE [5.3 The plural and the definite form of nouns](#)

Translate into Somali

The verbs **rabaa/rabtaa**, **doonayaa/doonaysaa** *wants* and **jecel yahay/jeceshahay** *is fond of, likes* are both followed by a subclause starting with the word **in that**.

The subclause must contain a subject word, even if its subject is the same as the subject of the main clause. Since there is a subject word, the verb in the subclause has to be in the simple present subjunctive.

The following sentences are all quite similar to each other. They consist of a main clause followed by a subclause containing a subject word and the verb in the present subjunctive.

1. I want you to sing. (I want that you sing.)

Jag vill att du sjunger.

2. Omar wants to build a new hut. (Omar wants that he builds a new hut.)

3. Ahemd wants to read the book.

4. Maryan wants to read the letter.

5. Sahra wants to learn English.

6. Ahmed want to plant a tree.

7. Hawo likes to play with the sand. (Hawo likes that she plays with the sand.)

8. Omar likes to draw (something).

9. Sahro likes to watch the birds.
10. Hassan likes to work in the shop.

7. Tone-marked texts

<https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455528>

7. Translations

- Biyo
Water
Vatten
2. Maxaa aad ku arki kartaa sawirka?
What can you see in the picture?
Vad kan du se på bilden?
 3. Maxaa ay u yimaadeen meeshan reer-miyiga, xayawaannada iyo shimbiruhu?
Why did the nomads, animals and birds come to this place?
Varför har nomaderna, djuren och fåglarna kommit hit (till den här platsen)?
 4. Biyuhu waa muhiim.
Water is important.
Vatten är viktigt.
 5. Biyo la'aan ma noolaan karno.
We cannot live without water.
Utan vatten kan vi inte leva.
 6. Biyaha waxaa laga helaa meelo badan.
Water is to be found in many places. / One finds water in many places.
Vatten hittar man på många ställen.

- Isticmaalka biyaha
The use of water.
Användningen av vatten.
8. Eeg sawirradan.
Look at these pictures.
Titta på de här bilderna.
 9. Maxaa aynu u isticmaalnaa biyaha?
What do we use water for?
Vad använder vi vatten till?
 10. Biyaha waxa aynu u isticmaalnaa cabbitaan.
We use water as a drink. / We use water for drinking.
Vi använder vatten till att dricka.
 11. Wixa aan u isticmaalnaa **wax ku** karinta.
We use it to cook (**something in it**). / We use it for cooking.
Vi använder vatten till att koka (**saker**) i.
 12. Wixa aan u isticmaalnaa **wax ku** maydhidda.

We use it to wash (**things in/with it**). / We use it for washing.

Vi använder vatten till att tvätta (**saker**) med.

13. Waxa aan u isticmaalnaa **ku** waraabinta dhirta.

We use it to water the plants (**with**).

Vi använder vatten till att vattna växter **med**.

14. Waxa aan u isticmaalnaa walxo badan.

We use it for many things.

Vi använder det till många saker.

15. Halkee ayaa aynu ka helnaa biyaha?

Where do we get water from?

Var (vilken plats) får vi vatten ifrån?

Ilaha biyaha

Sources of water

Källor till vatten

16. Qoysaska qaar waxa ay biyaha ka helaan balliyada.

Some (of the) families get water from (the) ponds.

En del familjer får vatten från dammar(na).

17. Waxa ay ku soo dhaansadaan jirikaanno.

They fetch water with jerrycans.

De hämtar vatten med/i dunkar.

18. Qoysaska qaar waxa ay biyaha ka helaan matoorrada gacanta.

Some (of the) families get water from the handpumps.

En del familjer får vatten från handpumpar.

19. Waxa ay ku soo dhaansadaan jirikaanno.

They fetch water with jerrycans.

De hämtar vatten med/i dunkar.

20. Reer-miyigu waxa ay biyaha ka helaan balliyada.

(The) nomads get water from (the) ponds.

Nomader(na) får vatten från dammar(na).

21. Waxa ay biyaha ku rartaan awrtooda.

They load the water onto their pack camels.

De lastar vattnet på sina packkameler.

22. Qoysaska qaar waxa ay biyaha ka iibsadaan biyoolaha.

Some (of the) families buy water from the water seller.

En del familjer köper vatten av vattenförsäljaren.

23. Waxa ay ku kaydsadaan fuustoojin waaweyn.

They store it in large barrels.

De förvarar vattnet i stora tunnor.

24. Qoysaska qaar waxa ay biyaha ka helaan qasabadaha.

Some (of the) families get water from the taps.

En del familjer får vatten från rörledningar(na)/kranar(na).

25. Halkee buu qoyskiinnu ka helaa biyaha?

Where does your family get water from?

Var får er familj vattnet ifrån?

26. Ku muuji sawir.

Show with a picture.

Visa med en bild/teckning.

Xarfaha waaweyn

The capital letters.

Stora bokstäver.

28. Ku bilow xaraf weyn marka aad qorayso magac gaar ah.
Start with a capital letter when you write a proper noun.
Börja med en stor bokstav när du skriver ett egennamn.
29. Baro magacyada qoyska Faadumo!
Learn the names of Faduma's family!
Lär dig namnen i Fadumas familj.
30. Maxamed, Aamina, Faadumo, Xasan, Caasho, Xaawo
Mohamed, Amina, Faduma, Hassan, Asha, Hawa.

Isku aaddi magacyada iyo sawirka!

Match the names with the picture! (lit. Bring together...)

Para (För) ihop namnen och bilden.

32. Waa kuma kani?
Who is this?
Vem är det här?
33. Waa Xasan.
It is Hassan.
Det är Hassan.
34. Waa tuma tani?
Who is this?
Vem är det här?
35. Waa Faadumo.
It is Faduma.
Det är Faduma.
36. Waa tuma tani?
Who is this?
Vem är det här?
37. Waa Aamina.
It is Amina.
Det är Amina.
38. Waa tuma tani?
Who is this?
Vem är det här?
39. Waa Caasho.
It is Asha.
Det är Asha.
40. Waa tuma tani?
Who is this?
Vem är det här?
41. Waa Xaawo.
It is Hawa.
Det är Hawa.
42. Waa kuma kani?
Who is this?
Vem är det här?
43. Waa Maxamed.
It is Mohamed.
Det är Mahamed.

Fiiri Xasan

- Look at Hassan.
Titta på Hassan.
45. Tilmaan lugtiisa.
Point out his leg.
Peka på hans ben.
46. Tilmaan gacantiisa.
Point out his arm.
Peka på hans arm.
47. Tilmaan madaxiisa.
Point out his head.
Peka på hans huvud.
48. Tilmaan afkiisa.
Point out his mouth.
Peka på hans mun.
49. Tilmaan jilibkiisa.
Point out his knee.
Peka på hans knä.
50. Tilmaan sankiisa.
Point out his nose.
Peka på hans näsa.
51. Tilmaan cagtiisa.
Point out his foot.
Peka på hans fot.
52. Tilmaan timahiisa.
Point out his hair.
Peka på hans hår.
53. Tilmaan dhegtiisa.
Point out his ear.
Peka på hans öra.
54. Tilmaan ishiisa.
Point out his eye.
Peka på hans öga.
55. Tilmaan xusulkiisa.
Point out his elbow.
Peka på hans armbåge.
56. timo, madax, il, san, gacan, lug, dheg, af, xusul, jilib, cag
hair, head, eye, nose, arm, leg, ear, mouth, elbow, knee, foot
hår, huvud, öga, näsa, arm, ben, öra, mun, armbåge, knä, fot
57. Immisa lugood ayaa uu leeyahay?
How many legs does he have?
Hur många ben har han?
58. Immisa gacmood ayaa uu leeyahay?
How many arms does he have?
Hur många armar har han?
59. Immisa madax ayaa uu leeyahay?
How many heads does he have?
Hur många huvuden har han?
60. Immisa dhegood ayaa uu leeyahay?

How many ears does he have?

Hur många öron har han?

61. Immisa xusul ayaa uu leeyahay?

How many elbows does he have?

Hur många armbågar har han?

62. Immisa jilib ayaa uu leeyahay?

How many knees does he have?

Hur många knän har han?

63. Immisa indhood ayaa uu leeyahay?

How many eyes does he have?

Hur många ögon har han?

64. Immisa san ayaa uu leeyahay?

How many noses does he have?

Hur många näsor har han?

65. Immisa cagood ayaa uu leeyahay?

How many feet does he have?

Hur många fötter har han?

Maxaa ay samaynayaan?

What are they doing?

Vad gör de?/Vad håller de på med?

66. Faadumo wejigeeda ayey dhaqaysaa.

Faduma is washing her face.

Faduma (håller på och/står och) tvättar sitt ansikte (sig i ansiktet).

67. Aabbe waxa uu nadiifinaya ilkihiisa.

Father is brushing his teeth. (lit. cleaning)

Pappa (håller på och) borstar (rengör) tänderna.

68. Hooyo waxa ay dhaqaysaa dhar.

Mother is washing clothes.

Mamma (håller på och) tvättar kläder.

69. Xasan waa uu shanlaysanayaa.

Hassan is combing his hair. (lit. combing himself)

Hassan (håller på och/står och) kammar sig.

70. Ka jawaab su'aalah!

Answer these questions!

Svara på de här frågorna.

71. Maxaa ay samaynaysaa hooyo?

What is mother doing?

Vad gör mamma? Vad håller mamma på med?

72. Maxaa uu samaynayaa aabbe?

What is father doing?

Vad gör pappa? Vad håller pappa på med?

73. Maxaa ay samaynaysaa Faadumo?

What is Faduma doing?

Vad gör Faduma? Vad håller Faduma på med?

74. Maxaa uu samaynayaa Xasan?

What is Hassan doing?

Vad gör Hassan? Vad håller Hassan på med?

- 1.– Naagtaasi ma reer-miyi baa?
 Is that woman a rural person?
 Är den där kvinnan en landsbygdsbo?
- 2.– Maya. Waa macallimad.
 No. She is a teacher.
 Nej, hon är lärare.
- 3.– Ma waxay ku dhalatay Boosaaso?
 Was she born in Bosaso?
 Är hon född i Bosaso?
- 4.– Haa. Waxay ku dhalatay Boosaaso.
 Yes. She was born in Bosaso.
 Ja, Hon är född i Bosaso.

7. Solutions

If you have follow up questions or alternative translations, please let me know. I'll comment on them and add them to these suggested solutions.

Somali 2, Unit 5, Translate into Somali

The sign Ø means that the phrase may be omitted (i.e. the field may be left empty). It is of course always possible to write <ey> instead of <ay> in every word where this diphthong occurs, i.e at the end of a word or when followed by a consonant. Statistically, however, <ay> is more common in almost all words.

I want you to sing. (I want that you sing.) Jag vill att du sjunger.

Waxaan doonayaa inaad heesto.

Waxaan rabaa inaad heestid.

Omar wants to build a new hut. (Omar wants that he builds a new hut.)

Cumar waxa uu doonayaa in uu dhiso mundul cusub.
 wuxuu rabaa inuu dhisto

wuu dhisaa - he builds in general

wuu dhista - he builds for himself (autobenefactive verb)

Ahmed wants to read the book.

Axmed waxa uu doonayaa in uu akhriyo buugga.
 wuxuu rabaa inuu akhristo

It is also possible to use the autobenefactive verb: **akhristo**, meaning that he wants to read so that it benefits himself, i.e. so that he himself will enjoy the reading.

Maryan wants to read the letter.

Maryan waxa ay doonaysaa in ay akhriso warqadda.
 waxay rabtaa inay akhrido
 akhrisato

The verb **akhriyaa** can be inflected both according to the first and the second verb group (conjugation).

Also the autobenefactive verb may be used: **akhrisato**

Sahra wants to learn English.

Sahra waxa ay doonaysaa in ay barato Ingiriisi(ga)..
Sahro waxay rabtaa inay af Ingiriis(ka)

Ahmed want to plant a tree.

Axmed waxa uu doonayaan in uu geed beero.
wuxuu rabaa inuu beero geed.

Hawo likes to play with the sand. (Hawo likes that she plays with the sand.)

Xaawa waxa ay jeceshahay in ay ku ciyaarto ciidda.
Xaawo waxay inay ciidda ku ciyaarto.

Omar likes to draw (something).

Cumar waxa uu jecel yahay in uu wax sawiro.
wuxuu jecelyahay inuu

Sahro likes to watch the birds.

Sahra waxa ay jeceshahay in ay daawato shimbiraha.
Sahro waxay inay firiso
u fiirsato

Hassan likes to work in the shop.

Xasan waxa uu jecel yahay in uu ka shaqeeyo dukaanka.
Xasan wuxuu jecelyahay inuu

Somalis often has a pair of verb with a ordinary verb and an **autobenefactive** verb.

The **autobenefactive** verb expresses that you are doing something for your own benefit.

The autobenefactive verb contains an additional **-t-** or **-d-**.

If the ordinary form already has a **-t-** or **-d-**, the autobenefactive verb has **-at-**.

| The ordinary verb (1st group/conjugation) | The autobenefactive verb (3rd group/conjugation) |
|---|--|
| waan / wuu dhisaa | waan / wuu dhistaa |
| waad / way dhistaa | waad / way dhisataa |
| waan dhisnaa | waan dhisanna |
| waad dhistaan | waad dhisataan |
| way dhisaan | way dhistaan |

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| waan / wuu akhriyaa | waan / wuu akhristaa |
| waad / way akhrisaa (akhridaa) | waad / way akhrisataa |
| waan akhrinnaa | waan akhrisanna |
| waad akhrisaan (akhridaan) | waad akhrisataan |
| way akhriyaan | way akhristaan |

All the forms that end in **-aa** change into **-o** to form the subjunctive.

The forms in **-aan** don't change in writing, but the subjunctive forms are pronounced with an extra high tone on **-áan**.

Cutubka 8aad

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455529>

8.1 Safarkii Maryan

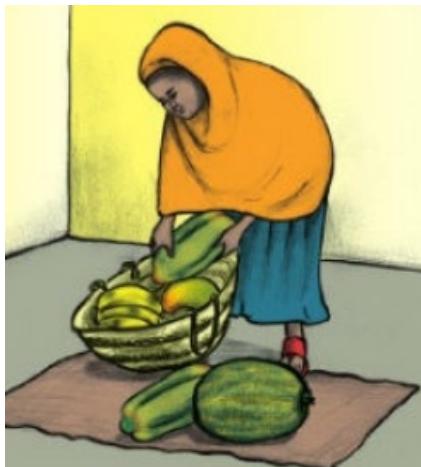
Akhri sheekadan.

sáfar -ka *travel, trip*
-tan/-dan, -kan/-gan *this*



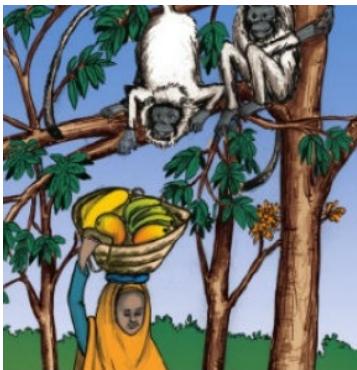
Tani waa Maryan. Waxa ay doonaysaa
in ay soo booqato ayeyadeed.
Waxa ay ayeyadeed ku nooshahay
tuulo u dhow Jilib.

ay *she, it, they | hon, den, det, de*
doonaa *will*
doonayaa *wants*
ín *that | att*
soó *to a place, go and*
booqdaa, booqataa *visit*
ayeéyo -áda *grandmother*
teeda, keeda *her(s)*
noól *living*
noóshahay < *nool+tahay
tuúlo -áda *village*
ú dhów *close to*



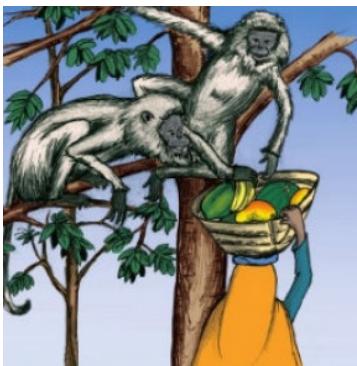
ridaa, riddaa *throw, put*
dambiíl -sha *basket*
cámbe -áha *mango(s)*
qáre -áha = xábxab -ka
watermelon(s)

Maryan waxa ay ku riddey dambiishii
moos, cambe, qare iyo babbaay.



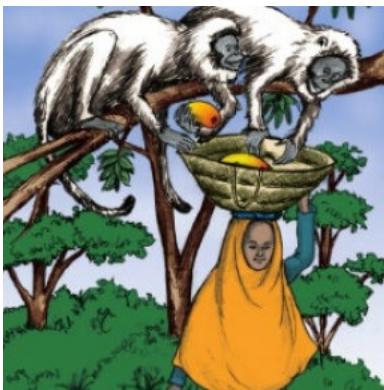
Maryan waxa ay dhex martay kaynta.
Ma aysan arag daanyeerrada geedaha
ku jira.

dhéx -da middle
maraa, martaa passes
dhex maraa passes through
kayn -ta forest, woods
aysan < *ay+aan she ... not
má = aan not
arag = arkin saw
daanyéer -ka monkey
géed -ka, pl. -ó -áha tree
jiraa exists, dwells, is



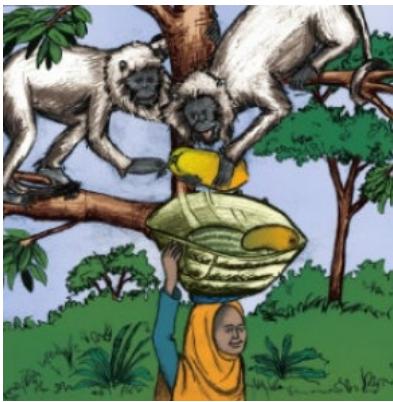
Maryan waxa ay filaysaa, in ay
ayeeyadeed farxi doonto sababtoo ah
waxa ay jeceshahay moos.

filayaa hopes, believes, expects
fárxi infinitive become happy
sabábtoo ah because
ah being, that is, which is | som är
jecel fond (of something) | förtjust (i
ngt)
jeceshahay < *jecel+tahay

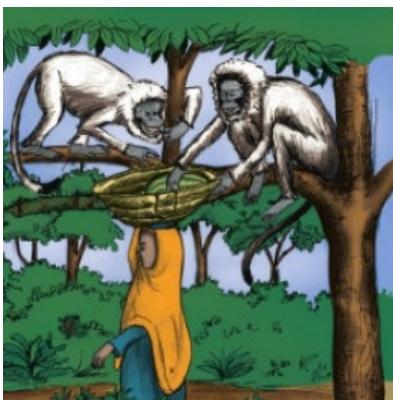


Maryan waxa ay filaysaa,
in ay ayeeyadeed farxi doonto
sababtoo ah waxa ay u siddaa cambe.

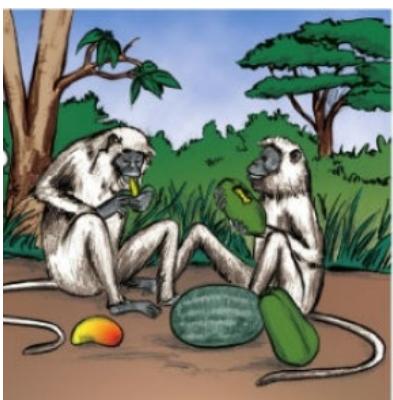
ú to (her)
sidaa, siddaa carries, brings



Maryan waxa ay filaysaa, in ay
ayeyadeed farxi doonto sababtoo ah
waxa ay jeceshahay babbaay.



Maryan waxa ay filaysaa, in ay
ayeyadeed farxi doonto sababtoo ah
waxa ay u siddaa qare.



"Annagu aad ayaan u faraxsan nahay,
sababta oo ah waxa aan jecel nahay
moos, babbaay, cambe iyo qare."

áad ... ú *very, a lot*
ayáan = ayáa aan
aan *I, we* | *jag, vi*
faraxsán *happy*
jeclahay < *jecel+ahay

Halkee ayaa uu daanyeerku ka helay
khudaartan?
Ka sheekhee.

hál -ka place
helaa, heshaa finds, gets | hittar, fär
khudaár -ta vegetables and fruit
ká about (it), from (it)
sheekeeyaa tells (a story)

8.2 Geedka Mooska



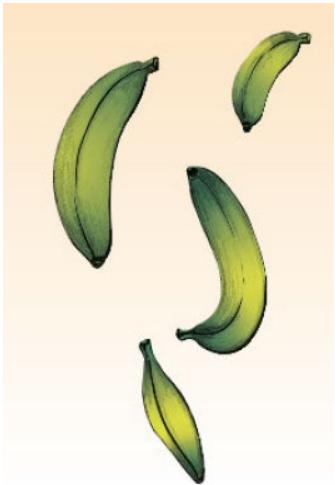
Moosku waa miro
macaan badan. Waxa
uu ka baxaa dalalka
cimilada kulul ee
biyaha badan leh.
Geedka mooska

dhererkiisu waxa uu gaaraa ilaa
saddex mitir. Geedku waxa uu
leeyahay caleemo ballaaran oo
dhaadheer.

Geedka mooska mirihiisu waxa ay ku
bislaadaan sagaal bilood. Muddadaas
ka dib ayaa la goostaa oo la cunaa.
Waxaa la guraa miraha mooska oo
weli cagaar ah. Waqtii gaaban markii
uu yaallo ayaa midabkiisu hurdi isu
beddelaa dabadeedna la cunaa.

Dalkeenna Soomaaliya waxaa ka baxa
saddex nooc oo moos ah. Nooc
mirihiisu waa ay yaryar yihiin oo waa
ay moos macaan badan yihiin. Waxaa
loo yaqaan sukaari.

miró -áha (pl.) fruits, seeds
macáan -ka sweet taste
baxaa, baxdaa comes out, grows
dál -ka, pl. dalál -ka country
címilo -áda climate
kulúl warm
ee (here) and
leh having, that has
dhérer -ka length, height
gaaraa reaches
ilaa up to
caleén -ta leaf
ballaaráñ wide, broad
dhaadhéer, pl. of dhéer
bislaadaa ripens, becomes ripe
bil -sha month
múddo -áda period of time
-taas / -daas that
ká dib after
la one | man
goostaa cuts, harvests
guraa collects
oo (here) that
welí still
cagáar -ka green thing
ah being, that is
wáqtí -ga (Ar.) time
markii when
yaallaa lies
mídab -ka colour
húrdi -ga yellow colour
isú beddelaa changes (itself) to
isú < is+ú itself ... to
dabadeed then
-na and
nóoc -a kind, sort
loó yaqaan(naa) one knows them
as, one calls them, they are called
loó < *la+ú one ... to/as



Nooca kale waxa uu
leeyahay miro
dhaadheer oo
qalloocan. Waxaa
loo yaqaannaa
booyo.

qalloocán bent

Nooca saddexaad
waa mid ballaaran

saddexaád third

míd -ka one

karsadaa cooks for oneself

oo la karsado. Waxaa loo yaqaannaa
moos-bukeeni.

Kee baad jeceshahay?

baad = baa aad

aad you | du, ni

ká jawaabaa (Ar.) answers |

besvarar, svarar på

sú'aál -sha (Ar.) = weydiín -ta

question | fråga

ahi, subject form of ah

1. Geedka mooska ahi dhererkiiisu
immisa ayuu gaaraa?

2. Halkee ka baxaa geedka mooska
ahi?

3. Sidee bay u eg yihiin caleemaha
mooska?

4. Immisa nooc oo moos ah ayaan
beerannaa?

sí -da manner, way

sideé + ú in what manner?, how?

ég similar

ég yahay is similar, looks

beertaa, beerataa grows, cultivates

for oneself

beerannaa we grow for ourselves

Af-Soomaali 2, Muqdisho 2001 & Hargeysa 2010: 47–52

8.4 Buuxi meelaha bannaan (< 7.8)

weyn, dheer, yar, nadiif

1. Xaawo waa gabar _____.
2. Timaheedu waa _____.
3. Masku waa xayawaan _____.
4. Maroodigu waa xayawaan _____.

xayawáan -ka (Ar.) animal | djur

- Ma doonaysaa in aad wax barato?
- Maxaa aan bartaa?
- Waxa aad barataa farta afkaaga hooyo. Kolkaas baa aad wax akhrin kari doontaa waxna qori kari doontaa.
- Sidee baa aan u akhriyaa?
- Waxa aad u akhridaa sida soo socota:

bartaa, barataa learns | lär sig

b t j x kh d r s sh dh c g f q
k l m n w h y

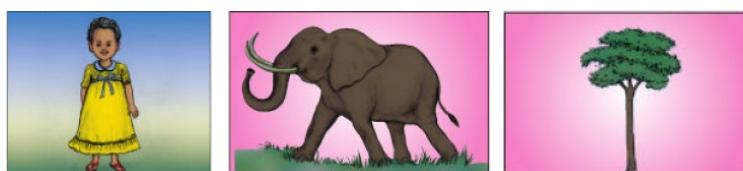
Ka jawaab su'aalaha soo socda.

1. Immisa indhood ayaad leedahay?
2. Immisa lugood ayaad leedahay?
3. Immisa farood ayaad leedahay?
4. Immisa dhegood ayaad leedahay?

íl, ísha, pl. indhó -áha eye | öga

dhég -ta ear | öra

Ka qor weer gaaban sawir waliba.



8.4 Waan dhaqay

LISTEN AT https://youtu.be/CLUm9_oJi7E

Waan dhaqay,
dhaqay, dhaqay madaxayga
Waan dhaqay,
dhaqay, dhaqay wejigayga
Waan dhaqay,
dhaqay, dhaqay gacmahayga
Waan dhaqay,
dhaqay, dhaqay garbahayga
Waan dhaqay,
dhaqay, dhaqay lugahayga
Waan dhaqay,
dhaqay, dhaqay cagahayga
Waan dhaqay,
dhaqay, dhaqay ilkahayga

dhaqaa, dhaqdaa *washes | tvättar*

mádax -a *head | huvud*

weji -ga *face | ansikte*

gacán -ta, pl. gacmó -áha *hand,
arm*

gárab -ka, pl. garbá -áha
shoulder | skuldra, axel

lúg -ta, pl. lugó -áha *leg | ben*

cág -ta, pl. cagó -áha *foot | fot*

ílig -ga, pl. ilkó -áha *tooth | tand*

Wadahadallo 35–36

35.2

- Ma Xabashi baa tahay?
- Haa. Waxaan ahay Xabashi?
- Aabbahaa iyo walaalkaa ma waxay ku nool yihiin magaalo?
- Haa. Waxay ku nool yihiin magaalo.

35.3

- Ma miyi bay ku nool yihiin raggaasi?
- Maya. Hargeysa bay ku nool yihiin.
- Ma Soomaali baa?
- Haa. Waa Soomaali.

míyi -ga countryside | landsbygd

36.0

- Ma waxaad jeceshahay, in aad magaalo ku noolaato mise in aad miyi ku noolaato?
- Waxaan jeclahay, in aan magaalo ku noolaado.

noolaadaa, noolaataa *lives, becomes alive, settles (somewhere) | lever, börjar leva, bor, bosätter sig*

36.0.a

- Ma waxaad jeceshahay, in aad magaalo ku noolaato mise miyi?
- Waxaan jeclahay, in aan magaalo ku noolaado.

36.1

- Ma waxaad jeceshahay, in aad Muqdisho ku noolaato mise in aad Hargeysa ku noolaato?
- Waxaan jeclahay, in aan Muqdisho ku noolaado.
- Ma Xabashi baa tahay?
- Haa.

36.2

- Ma waxaad jeceshahay, in aad Sacuudi
Carabiya ku noolaato mise Cadan?
- Wuxaan jeclahay, in aan Sacuudi Carabiya
ku noolaado.
- Ma Sacuudi baa tahay?
- Haa, Sacuudi baan ahay.

Cadan *Aden* (city in Yemen | stad
i Jemen)

36.3

- Ma nabad baa?
- Waa nabad.
- Ma Maraykan baa tahay?
- Haa, Maraykan baan ahay.
- Ma waxaad jeceshahay, in aad
Maraykanka ku noolaato mise in aad
Soomaaliya ku noolaato?
- Wuxaan jeclahay, in aan Soomaaliya ku
noolaado.

Beginning in Somali (1966: 93–96)

8. Erayo cusub

Quizlet 2.08, Somali-English:

Quizlet 2.08, somaliska-svenska:

| | | |
|--|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| áad (short subj.pron.) | <i>you</i> | <i>du, ni</i> |
| áan (short subj.pron.) | <i>I, we</i> | <i>jag, vi</i> |
| ah (reduced form) | <i>being, that is, which is</i> | <i>som är</i> |
| awr (f. coll.) | <i>pack camels</i> | <i>lastkameler</i> |
| áy (short subj.pron.) | <i>she, it, they</i> | <i>hon, den, det, de</i> |
| áynu (short subj.pron.) | <i>we (including the listener)</i> | <i>vi (inkluderar lyssnaren)</i> |
| bartaa, barataa | <i>learns</i> | <i>lärt sig</i> |
| dhég (f.) | <i>ear</i> | <i>öra</i> |
| fár (f.) | <i>finger</i> | <i>finger; skrift</i> |
| helaa, heshaa | <i>finds, gets</i> | <i>hittar, får</i> |
| íl (f.), pl. indhó | <i>eye</i> | <i>öga</i> |
| ká jawaabaa (Arabic) | <i>answers</i> | <i>besvarar, svarar på</i> |
| kól (m.) | <i>moment, instance, occasion</i> | <i>ögonblick, tidpunkt</i> |
| kólkaas | <i>then, that moment</i> | <i>då, (vid) den där tidpunkten</i> |
| míyi (m.) | <i>countryside</i> | <i>landsbygd</i> |
| soó socda[↑], soó socota (reduced form) | <i>following</i> | <i>följande, som följer</i> |
| su'aál (f.) (Arabic) | <i>question</i> | <i>fråga</i> |
| xayawáan (m.) (Arabic) | <i>animal</i> | <i>djur</i> |

Word formation

farxaa, faraxdaa *is/becomes happy*

fárxi *be(come) happy*

faraxsán *happy*

hal *place* **mar** (*point in*) *time, occasion*

halkeé? *where?* **markii** *when*

dhéer *long, tall, high, plural: dhaadhéer*

dhérer -ka *length, height*

yár *small, little, plural: yaryár*

8. Naxwe

Plural of adjectives

| SINGULAR | PLURAL |
|----------|-----------|
| yár | yaryár |
| dhéer | dhaadhéer |

Main clause verb form

| PRESENT | POSITIVE | NEGATIVE = SUBJUNCTIVE |
|-------------|----------|---|
| SIMPLE | -aa | má -o má heeso má heesto má heesno |
| | -aan | má -áan má heestáan má heesáan |
| PROGRESSIVE | | má heésayo má heésayso má heésayno |
| | | 2p má heésaysáan 3p má heésayáan |

8. Layliyo

Change these clauses into the negative present tense.

2. Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

3. Waxa aan dhigtaa fasalka labaad.

NB. group 3 verb: dhigt-aa, dhiga-taa, stem: dhiga-

4. Hooyo cunto aaya ay karinaysaa.

5. Aabbe beerta aaya uu falayaa.

6. Safiya waxa ay siddaa biyo.
7. Aamina waxa ay la socotaa Safiya.

NB. group 3 verb: socd-aa, socio-taa, stem: socio-

8. Waxa ay tagayaan guriga.
9. Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga.
10. Waxa ay u socotaa guriga.

8. Tone-marked texts

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455529>

8. Translations

Safarkii Maryan

Maryan's journey (you know).
Maryans färd / tur / vandring.

Akhri sheekadan

Read this story.
Läs den här berättelsen.

Tani waa Maryan.

This is Maryan.
Det här är Maryan.
Waxa ay doonaysaa in ay soo booqato ayeeyadeed.

She wants to visit her grandmother.
Hon vill besöka sin mormor / farmor.

Waxa ay ayeeyadeed ku nooshahay tuulo u dhow Jilib.
Her grandmother lives in a village near Jilib.

Maryan waxa ay ku riddey dambiishii moos, cambe, qare iyo babbaay.
Maryan (has) packed banana, mango, watermelon and papaya in the basket (you know).

Maryan har lagt bananer, mango, vattenmelon och papaya i korgen (du vet).

Maryan waxa ay dhex martay kaynta.

Maryan passed through the forest.
Maryan gick genom skogen.

Ma aysan arag daanyeerrada geedaha ku jira.

She didn't see the monkeys (sitting) in the trees.
Hon såg inte aporna (som fanns/satt) i träden.
The verb form **arag** is an irregular negative past tense form.

The verb **jira** is necessary in Somali, since a preposition like **ku** cannot connect two nouns, only a verb and a noun. This verb is however relatively void of meaning, and it can very well be omitted in the translation. It is a kind of dummy word that has to be present in Somali because of its grammatical principles.

Maryan waxa ay filaysaa, in ay ayeeyadeed farxi doonto sababtoo ah waxa ay jeceshahay moos.

Maryan expects/hopes that her grandmother will be happy, since she loves bananas.

Maryan förmadar/hoppas att mormor/farmor kommer att bli glad eftersom hon tycker om bananer.

Maryan waxa ay filaysaa, in ay ayeeyadeed farxi doonto sababtoo ah waxa ay jeceshahay cambe.

Maryan expects/hopes that her grandmother will be happy, since she loves mangoes.

Maryan förmadar/hoppas att mormor/farmor kommer att bli glad eftersom hon tycker om mango.

Maryan waxa ay filaysaa, in ay ayeeyadeed farxi doonto

Maryan expects/hopes that her grandmother will be happy,

Maryan förmadar/hoppas att mormor/farmor kommer att bli glad
sababtoo ah waxa ay jeceshahay babbaay.

since she loves papayas.

eftersom hon tycker om papaya.

Maryan waxa ay filaysaa, in ay ayeeyadeed farxi doonto

Maryan expects/hopes that her grandmother will be happy,

Maryan förmadar/hoppas att mormor/farmor kommer att bli glad
sababtoo ah waxa ay jeceshahay qare.

since she loves watermelons.

eftersom hon tycker om vattenmelon.

Aad ayaan u faraxsan ahay.

I am very happy.

Jag är väldigt glad.

Waxa aan jeclahay moos, babbaay, cambe iyo qare.

I love bananas, papayas, mangoes and watermelons.

Jag älskar bananer, papaya, mango och vattenmelon.

It is interesting to see how none of these fruits may take plural ending in Somali. They are all treated as “mass nouns” referring to a non-specified amount of fruit. It may just as well be one piece as hundreds of kilos.

English, on the other hand seems quite keen on plural suffixes for fruit, whereas Swedish seems to be more similar to Somali when it comes to lesser known or very big fruits. Among the fruits mentioned here, only bananas are commonly used in the plural in Swedish.

Halkee daanyeerku ka helay khudaartaan?

Where did the monkey get those fruits from?

Var fick apan de där frukterna ifrån?

The Somali word **khudaar** is a mass noun that includes both *vegetables* and *fruit*, hence the translation has to take the context into account.

Ka sheekee.

Tell the story about it.

Berätta om det.

Geedka mooska

The banana tree

Bananträdet

Moosku waa miro macaan badan.

The banana is a very sweet fruit.

Bananen är en mycket söt (och god) frukt.

Waxa uu ka baxaa dalalka cimilada kulul ee biyaha badan leh.

It grows in countries with a warm climate where there is a lot of water (lit. that have a lot of water).

Den växer i länder med varmt klimat där det finns (eg. som har) mycket vatten.

Geedka mooska dhererkiiisu waxa uu gaaraa ilaa saddex mitir.

The banana tree's height reaches up to three meters.

The banana tree grows up to three meters tall.

Bananträdets höjd når upp till tre meter.

Bananträdet blir upp till tre meter högt.

Geedku waxa uu leeyahay caleemo ballaaran oo dhaadheer.

The tree has broad and long leaves.

Trädet har breda och långa löv.

Geedka mooska mirihiisu waxa ay ku bislaadaan sagaal bilood.

The banana tree fruit becomes mature in nine months.

Bananträdets frukter mognar på nio månader.

Muddadaas ka dib ayaa la goostaa oo la cunaa.

After that period of time it is cut and eaten.

Efter den perioden skär man loss dem och äter dem.

När den tiden passerat skördar man (dem) och äter dem.

Waxaa la guraa miraha mooska **oo weli** cagaar ah.

The banana fruits are harvested **while** they are **still** green (lit. still being green).

Man skördar bananens frukter **då** de (eg. som) **fortfarande** är gröna (omogna).

Waqt gaaban markii **uu yaallo** ayaa midabkiisu hurdi isu beddelaa dabadeedna la cunaa.

When **it lies** a short time its colour changes (itself) to yellow and then it is eaten.

När **den ligger** en kort tid förändras (eg. förändrar sig) dess färg till gul och därefter äter man den.

Dalkeenna Soomaaliya waxaa ka baxa saddex nooc oo moos ah.

In our country Somalia three kinds of bananas are grown (lit. grow, come up).

I vårt land Somalia växer det tre typer av bananer.

Nooc mirihiisu waa ay yaryar yihiin oo macaan badan yihiin.

The fruits of one kind are small and (they are) very sweet (and tasty).

Waxaa loo yaqaan sukaari.

It is called Sukari. It is known as Sukari.

Man kallar dem sukari (sötbanan?, dessertbanan?). De kallas sukari.

De är kända som sukari.

Also 30, 32 below: 'sukaari', 'booyo', 'bukeeni' are names. It is difficult to translate them. I have done some googling, but I am afraid you need to be an expert to find the correct translations in to English (and Swedish, if there are any).

Nooca kale waxa uu leeyahay miro dhaadheer oo qalloocan.

Another kind has fruit which is long and crooked.

Den andra sorten har långa (och) böjda frukter.

Waxaa loo yaqaan booyo.

It is called Booyo (?) It is known as Booyo.

Man kallar dem booyo. De kallas booyo.

De är kända som booyo.

Nooca saddexaad waa mid ballaaran oo la karsado.

The third kind is wide (thick, chubby), which is for cooking.

Den tredje sorten är en bred som man kokar.

Waxaa loo yaqaan moos bukeeni.

It is called the Bukeeni banana.

Man kallar dem bukeni. De kallas bukeni.

De är kända som bukeni.

Kee baad jeceshahay?

Which one do you like?

Vilken tycker du om?

Ka jawaab su'aalahsan.

Answer these questions.

Svara på de här frågorna.

Geedka mooska ahi dhererkiisu immisa ayuu gaaraa?

How tall does the banana tree grow?

lit. How much does the height of the banana tree reach?

Hur högt blir bananträdet?

eg. Hur myckt (upp)når bananträdets höjd?

Halkee ka baxaa geedka mooska ahi?

Where does the banana tree grow?

Var växer (kommer upp) bananträdet?

Sidee bay u eg yihiin caleemaha mooska?

What do banana leaves look like?

lit. What manner are the leaves of the banana similar to?

Hur ser bananens blad ut?

eg. Till vilket sätt är bananens blad liknande?

Immisa nooc oo moos ah ayaan beerannaa?

How many kinds of bananas are cultivated?

Hur många typer av banan odlar vi?

Buuxi meelaha bannaan: weyn, dheer, yar, nadiif

Fill in the blanks: large, long, small, clean (lit. empty places)

Fyll i luckorna (eg. de tomma platserna): stor, lång, liten, ren (eg. ren sak)

76. Xaawo waa gabar yar.

Hawa is a small girl.

Hawa är en liten flicka.

77. Timaheedu waa nadiif.

Her hair is clean.

Hennes hår är rent.

78. Masku waa xayawaan dheer.

The snake is a long animal.

Ormen är ett långt djur.

79. Maroodigu waa xayawaan weyn.

The elephant is a large animal.

Elefanten är ett stort djur.

80. Ma doonaysaa in aad wax barato?

Do you want to learn things?

Vill du lära dig en sak/något?

81. Maxaa aan bartaa?
 What do I learn?
 Vad ska jag lära mig?
82. Waxa aad barataa farta afkaaga hooyo.
 You learn the script/writing of your mother tongue (lit. language/mouth).
 Du ska lära (eg. lär) dig att skriva ditt modersmål (eg. ditt modersmåls skrift).
83. Kolkaas baa aad wax akhrin kari doontaa waxna qori kari doontaa.
 Then you will be able to read (things) and you will be able to write (things).
 Då kommer du att kunna läsa (saker) och du kommer att kunna skriva (saker).
84. Sidee baa aan u akhriyaa?
 How do I read? (lit. In what manner do I read?)
 På vilket sätt läser jag? / Hur läser jag?
85. Waxa aad u akhridaa sida soo socota: b t j x kh d r s sh dh c g f q k l m n w h y
 You read in the following manner: b t j x kh d r s sh dh c g f q k l m n w h y
 Du läser på följande sätt: b t j x kh d r s sh dh c g f q k l m n w h y
86. Ka jawaab su'aalaha soo socda.
 Answer the following questions.
 Svara på följande frågor.
87. Immisa indhood ayaad leedahay?
 How many eyes do you have?
 Hur många ögon har du?
88. Immisa lugood ayaad leedahay?
 How many legs do you have?
 Hur många ben har du?
89. Immisa farood ayaad leedahay?
 How many fingers do you have?
 Hur många fingrar har du?
90. Immisa dhegood ayaad leedahay?
 How many ears do you have?
 Hur många öron har du?
91. Ka qor weer gaaban sawir waliba.
 Write a short sentence about each (every) picture.
 Skriven en kort mening om varje bild.

?? (35.3)

5.– Ma miyi bay ku nool yihiin dadkaasi?
 Do those people live in the countryside?
 Bor de där människorna på landsbygden?

6.– Maya. Muqdisho ayay ku nool yihiin.
 No. They live in Mogadishu.
 Nej. De bor i Mogadishu.

7.– Soomaali miyaa?
 Are they Somali?
 Är de somalier?

miyaa < ma + ayaa. The word ma serves as a question particle, and the particle ayaa puts focus on the preceding noun. This is the typical construction corresponding to English: *Is he...? Is she...? Is it...? Are they...?*

– Haa. Waa Soomaali.
Yes. They are Somali.
Ja. De är somalier.

36.3

– Ma nabad baa?
How are you?
Är allt bra med dig?
– Waa nabad.
Fine.
Ja, det är bra.

– Ma Maraykan baa tahay?
Are you American?
Är du amerikan?
– Haa, Maraykan baan ahay.

Yes, I'm American.
Ja, jag är amerikan.

– Ma waxaad jeceshahay, in aad Maraykanka ku noolaato mise in aad Soomaaliya ku noolaato?

Do you like (prefer) living in America or living in Somalia?
Gillar du (föredrar du) att bo i Amerika eller att bo i Somalia?

– Waxaan jeclahay, in aan Soomaaliya ku noolaado.
I like (prefer) living in Somalia.
Jag gillar (föredrar) att bo i Somalia.

8. Solutions

2. Ma aado dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

Ma uu aado dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

Muu aado dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

3. Ma dhigto fasalka labaad.

Ma aan dhigto fasalka labaad.

Maan dhigto fasalka labaad.

4. Hooyo cunto ma karinayso.

Hooyo cunto ma ay karinayso.

Hooyo cunto may karinayso.

5. Aabbe beerta ma falayo.

6. Safiya ma siddo biyo.

7. Aamina lama (ay) socoto Safiya.
somewhat dialectal: Aamina ma la socoto Safiya.
8. Waxa ay tágayaan guriga.
Má (ay) tágayáan guriga.
9. Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga.
Ma (uu / Muu) aado dugsiga.
10. Uma socoto guriga.

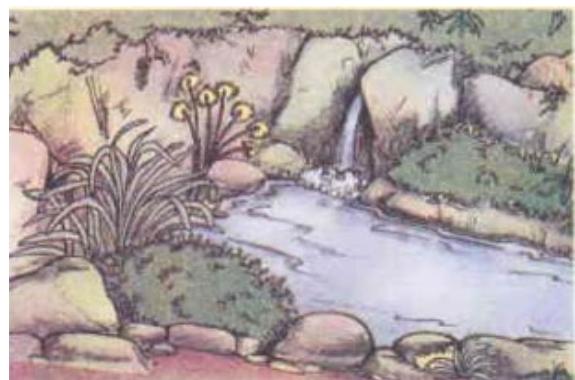
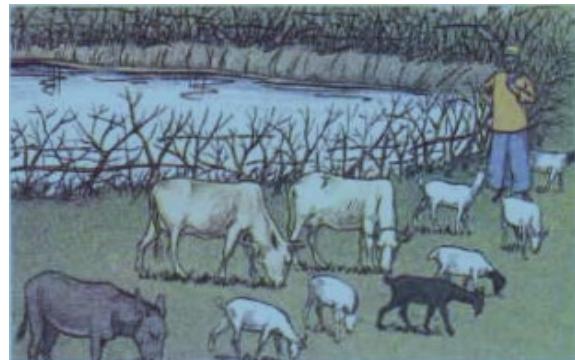
Cutubka 9aad

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455530>

9.1 Ilaha biyaha

Waxa aan biyaha ka helnaa meelo
badan. Meelahaas waxa la yiraahdaa
ilaha biyaha. Eeg sawirradan.
Kulligood waa ilaha biyaha.

íl -sha, pl. iló *source, spring* | källa
booqó (imp.) *visit* | besök
yiraahdaa / yidhaahdaa *calls* |
kallar
kúlli -ga (Ar.) *totality, all* | helhet,
totalitet, allt, alla
kulligood (§ 9.4.3) *all of them* | de
alla



Halkee bay biyaha dugsigiinnu ka
yimaaddaan?
Booqo ilaha biyaha **ee** ku dhow
dugsigaaga.

booqó (imp.) *visit* | besök
ée (conj.) *which* | som
kú dhów (adj.) *close to, nearby* |
närbelägen, nära

9.2 Ilaalinta nadaafadda ilaha biyaha

Ma nadiif baa ilaha biyaha?

Sidee bay dadka tuulo-joogga ahi **u**
nadiifiyaan ilaha biyahooda?

Waa in aynu ilaalinnaa nadaafadda
ilaha biyaheenna.

1. Qor saddex ka mid ah ilaha biyaha.

2. Maxaa aynu u isticmaalnaa biyaha
guryaheenna?

ilaalín -ta surveillance, protection |
tillsyn, skötsel, skydd(ande)

ilaaliyaa, ilaalisaa looks after,
watches, protects | vaktar, ser
efter

nadaafád -da (Ar.) cleanliness,
hygiene | renlighet, hygien

sí -da manner, way | sätt

sideé? + ú in which manner?, how?
| på vilket sätt?, hur?

dád -ka people | folk, människor

tuúlo -da village | by

ahi (§ 13.1.1 e) being | som är
waa ín must, has to, should, ought
to | bör, måste; det är nödvändigt
att

aynu we (incl. the listener) | vi
(inkluderar lyssnaren)

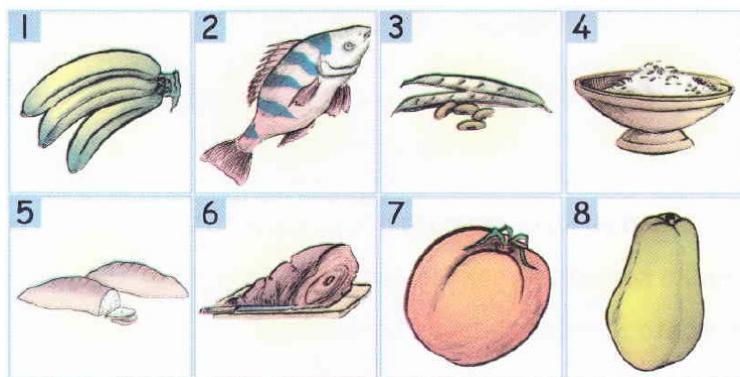
ka mid ah (§ 12.1.12) of | av

sáynis -ka (En. science) science
(school subject) | naturorienterande ämnen

Saynis, Fasalka 1aad. Hargeysa 2001: 42-44.

9.3 Baahiyaha qoyska

Waxa aynu u baahan nahay cunto.
 Cuntada kama maaranno.
 Cuntadu xoog baa ay inoo yeeshaa.
 Cuntadu waxa ay jidhkeenna gelisaa
 caafimaad.



Magacow cuntada kala duwan ee
 sawirka ka muuqata.

Waxa aynu guryaha ku cunnaa cunto
 kala duwan.

Adigu kuwee baa aad cuntadan soo
 cuntay?

Halkee baa aad ka heshaa cuntada?

Magacow saddex cunto oo kale oo aad
 ku cunto guriga.

baahí -da need | behov
ú baahán (adj.) needy, in need of |
 behövande, i behov av
nahay we are | vi är
kamá < *ka+má without ... not |
 utan ... inte (§ 5.2.4)
ká maarmaa, maarantaa manages
 without | klarar sig utan
xóog -ga strength, force, power |
 styrka, kraft
inoó < *ina+ú us ... for/to | oss ...
 till/för (§ 5.2.3)
yeelaa, yeeshaa does, makes | gör
geliyaa, gelisaa inserts, puts inside
 | placera inuti, för in
caafimáad -ka (Ar.) health | hälsa

magaców (imp.) tell the name of!
 säg namnet på

kuweé (pron.) which ones? | vilka?

cunto (subjunctive in subclause)
 you eat | du äter (§ 15.1)
gúri -ga house | hus

9.4 Baahida biyaha

Waxa aynu u baahan nahay biyo.
Biyaha kama maaranno.
Biyaha waxa aynu u isticmaalnaa
siyaabo kala duwan.
Sidee baa ay dadka sawirrada ka
muuqdaa u isticmaalaan biyaha?

isticmaalaa uses | använder
ú + siyaabó kala duwan in
different ways | på olika sätt
ká muuqdaa is visible, can be seen
in/on | syns på

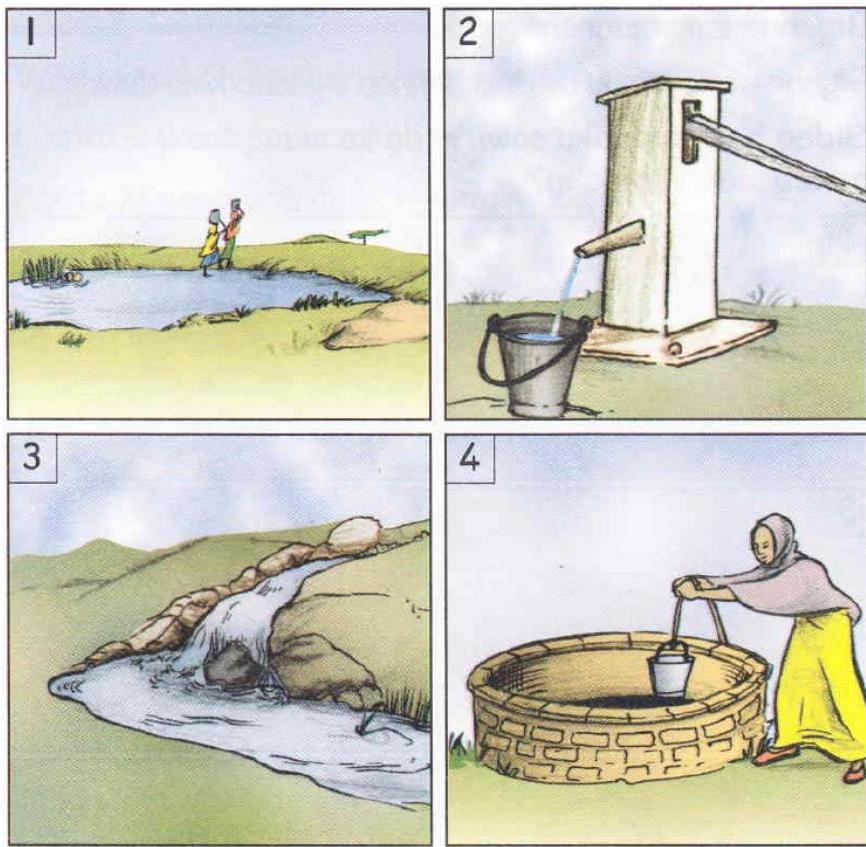


U sheeg fasalka **waxa aad** biyaha u
isticmaasho gurigiinna.

shéeg (imp.) say, tell | säg, berätta
wáxa the thing(s), what | sake(r)n(a),
vad (§ 15.2.4)

Xaggee baa aynu biyaha ka soo
helnaa?

xág -ga direction, area | riktning,
område
xaggeé? where? | var?, vart?



**Sawirradani waxa ay ina tusayaan
meelaha aynu biyaha ka helno
qaarkood. Meelahan waxa loo yaqaan
ilaha biyaha.**

**Sheeg ilaha biyaha ee aad ku aragto
sawirrada.**

sawirradani (§ 13.1.1.d)
ina us (*including the listener*) | **oss**
(*inkulderar lyssnaren*)
tusaa, tustaa *shows* | *visar*
qáar -ka *part* | *del*
qáarkood *some of them* | *några av
dem* (§ 9.3.3)

**loó < *la+ú one ... for/to | man ...
till/för** (§ 5.2.3)
loó yaqaan *one knows X as something* |
*man känner X som något, man
kallar X för något*

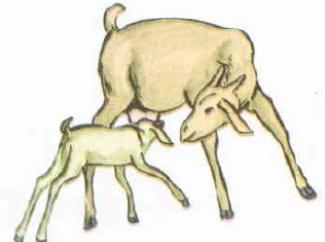
Cilmiga bulshada, Fasalka 1aad. Hargeysa 2001: 44-46.

9.5 Xayawaannada waxtarka leh



Dameeruhu waa xayawaanno waxtar leh. Waxa ay inoo qaadaan rarka culus.

daméer -ka, pl. dameeró, -áha
donkey | åsna
qaadaa, qaaddaa takes, lifts | tar,
lyfter
rar -ka load | last
culús (adj.) heavy | tung

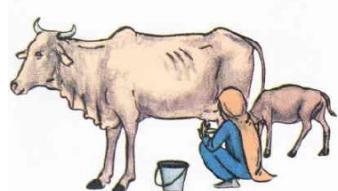


Riyuhu waa xayaawanno waxtar leh.
Waxa aynu ka helnaa caano.

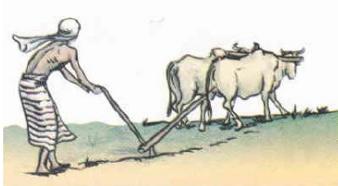
riˊ, best. rída, pl. riyó -áha goat |
get



Maxaa kale ee aynu ka helnaa riyaha?



Lo'du waa xayawaan waxtar leh.
Maxaa aynu ka helnaa?



Dibigu waa xayawaan waxtar leh.
Maxaa uu inoo qabtaa?

díbi -ga ox, bull | oxe, tjur
úu (pron.) he, it | han, den, det
qabtaa, qabataa does (a job) | utför
(ett arbete)



Kalluunku waa xayawaan waxtar leh.
Qoyskiinnu ma cunaa kalluun?



Shinnidu waa cayayaan waxtar leh.
Maxaa aynu ka helnaa?

shinni -da bee(s) | bi(n)
cayayáan -ka insect(s) | insekt(er)



Shimbiraha qaar baa ah xayawaan
waxtar leh. Maxaa aynu ka helnaa?



Awrtu waa xayawaanno waxtar leh.
Sidee bay inoo caawiyaan?

Magacow dhammaan xayawaannada
aad taqaannid.

Magacow xayawaannada waxtarka leh.

awr (f. coll.) *pack camels | last-kameler*

taqaannid (2nd sg. pres. subj.)
you know | du vet, du känner till

Saynis 1, Muqdisho 2001: 19–22

Wadahadallo 37–38

37.0

- Xasan, adigu xaggeed ku nooshahay?
- Waxaan ku nool ahay Soomaaliya.

xaggéed = xaggeé baad
nooshahay < *nool+tahay

37.1

- Caliyow, xaggeed ku dhalatay?
- Waxaan ku dhashay Muqdisho.
- Xasan, adigu xaggeed ku nooshahay?
- Waxaan ku nool ahay Boorame.

dhalatay *you were/she was born*
| du/hon föddes
dhashay *I/he was born* | jag/han
föddes

37.2

- Iska warran.
- Nabad.
- Waxaan ku nool ahay Burco. Adigu xaggeed
ku nooshahay?
- Ingiriiskaan ku nool ahay.

Ingiriiska *England* | *England*
Ingiriiskaan = Ingiriiska ayaa
aan

37.3

- Xaggeed ka timid?
- Waxaan ka imid Ruushka.
- Ma Ruushkaa ku nooshahay?
- Maya, Itoobiyaan ku nool ahay.

Ruushkkaa = Ruushka baa
Itoobiyaan = Itoobiya ayaa
aan

38.0

- Ma magaalaad ku nooshahay?
- Maya. Magaalo kuma nooli.

magaalaad = magaalo baad
kuma nooli < *ku+ma nool+ihi

38.1

- Ma magaaladaad ku nooshahay?
- Maya. Magaalo kuma nooli.
- Xaggee baad ku nooshahay?
- Miyaan ku nool ahay.

magaaladaad = magaalada
ayaa aad

miyaan = miyi ayaa aan

Beginning in Somali (1966: 97–100)

9. Erayo cusub

Quizlet 2.09, Somali-English: <https://quizlet.com/528628661/>

Quizlet 2.09, somaliska-svenska: <https://quizlet.com/388825465/>

| | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ú baahán (adj.) | <i>needy, in need of need</i> | <i>behövande, i behov av behov</i> |
| baahí (f.) | | |
| beeraa, beertaa | <i>grows, cultivates</i> | <i>planterar, odlar</i> |
| kú biíri (imp.) | <i>add</i> | <i>lägg till</i> |
| booqó (imp.) | <i>visit</i> | <i>besök</i> |
| caafimáad (m.) (Ar.) | <i>health</i> | <i>hälsa</i> |
| dabtaa, dabataa | <i>catches</i> | <i>fångar</i> |
| dád (m.) | <i>people</i> | <i>folk, människor</i> |
| dhów (adj.) | <i>close, nearby</i> | <i>närbelägen</i> |
| ée (conj.) | <i>of, which, but</i> | <i>av, som, men, utan</i> |
| geliyaa, gelisaa | <i>inserts, puts inside</i> | <i>placerar inuti, för in</i> |
| gúri (m.) | <i>house</i> | <i>hus</i> |
| haraa[↑], hartaa | <i>remains, is left</i> | <i>återstår, finns kvar</i> |
| ilaaliyaa[↑], ilaalisaa | <i>looks after, watches, protects</i> | <i>vaktar, ser efter</i> |
| ilaalín (f.) | <i>surveillance, protection</i> | <i>tillsyn, skötsel, skydd(ande)</i> |
| íl (f.), pl. iló | <i>source, spring</i> | <i>källa</i> |
| ina[↑] | <i>us (including the listener)</i> | <i>oss (inkulderar lyssnaren)</i> |
| inoó < ina + ú (obl. contr.) | <i>us ... for/to</i> | <i>oss ... till/för</i> |
| kamá < ka + má (obl. contr.) | <i>from ... not</i> | <i>från ... inte</i> |
| kúlli (m.) (Ar.) | <i>totality, all</i> | <i>helhet, totalitet, allt, alla</i> |
| kuweé (pron.) | <i>which ones?</i> | <i>vilka?</i> |
| léeyahay, léedahay | <i>has</i> | <i>har</i> |
| loó < la + ú (obl. contr.) | <i>one ... for/to</i> | <i>man ... till/för</i> |
| maánta (adv.) | <i>today</i> | <i>idag</i> |
| ká maarmaa, maarantaa | <i>manages without</i> | <i>klarar sig utan</i> |
| magaców (imp.) | <i>say the name of, tell</i> | <i>näm, namnge</i> |
| nácnac (m.) (Ar.) | <i>candy, sweets</i> | <i>godis, karameller</i> |
| nadaafád (f.) (Ar.) | <i>cleanliness, hygiene</i> | <i>renlighet, hygien</i> |
| nahay[↑] | <i>we are</i> | <i>vi är</i> |
| qálín (m.), pl. qalimmó (Ar.) | <i>pen</i> | <i>penna</i> |
| shálay (f.) | <i>yesterday</i> | <i>gårdagen, igår</i> |
| shéeg (imp.) | <i>say, tell</i> | <i>säg, berätta</i> |
| sí (f.), pl. siyaabó | <i>manner, way</i> | <i>sätt</i> |
| sideé? | <i>which manner?, how?</i> | <i>vilket sätt?, hur?</i> |
| tusaa[↑], tustaa | <i>shows</i> | <i>visar</i> |

| | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| tuúlo / tuuló (f.) | <i>village</i> | <i>by</i> |
| úu (short subj. pron.) | <i>he, it</i> | <i>han, den, det</i> |
| waa ín | <i>must, has to, should, ought to</i> | <i>bör, måste; det är nödvändigt att</i> |
| wadá (adv.) | <i>together</i> | <i>tillsammans</i> |
| wúxuu / wuxúu = waxa(a) + uu (opt. contr.) | <i>final focus + he/it</i> | <i>slutfokus + han/den/det</i> |
| xábbo / xabbó (f.) (Ar.) | <i>piece; seed, grain</i> | <i>styck; frö, korn</i> |
| xág (m.) | <i>direction, area</i> | <i>riktning, område</i> |
| xaggeé? | <i>where?</i> | <i>var?, vart?</i> |
| xóog (m.) | <i>strength, force, power</i> | <i>styrka, kraft</i> |
| yeelaa[↑], yeeshaa | <i>does, makes</i> | <i>gör</i> |
| yidhaahdaa[↑] / yiraahdaa | <i>calls</i> | <i>kallar</i> |
| cayayáan (m.) | <i>insect</i> | <i>insekt</i> |
| culús (adj.) | <i>heavy</i> | <i>tung</i> |
| daméer (m.), pl. dameeró, def. dameeráha | <i>donkey</i> | <i>åsna</i> |
| díbi (m.) | <i>ox, bull</i> | <i>oxe, tjur</i> |
| qaadaa, qaaddaa | <i>takes, lifts</i> | <i>tar, lyfter</i> |
| qabtaa, qabataa | <i>does (a job)</i> | <i>utför (ett arbete)</i> |
| rar (m.) | <i>load</i> | <i>last</i> |
| ri' (f.), best. rída | <i>goat</i> | <i>get</i> |
| shinni (f.) | <i>bee</i> | <i>bi</i> |
| taqaanid (2nd pers. sing. subjunctive verb form) | <i>you know</i> | <i>du vet, du känner till</i> |

9. Word clusters

Ordnästen

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| búug -ga | <i>a book, the book en bok, boken</i> |
| Arabic plural: | buugaág, buugaágta <i>books, the books böcker, böckerna</i> |
| Collective form: | buúg, buúgta <i>books, the books böcker, böckerna</i> |
| íl, ísha | <i>eye, the eye; source, the source öga, ögat; källa, källan</i> |
| irregular plural: | indhó, indháha <i>eyes, the eyes ögon, ögonen</i> |
| regular plural: | iló, iláha <i>sources, the sources källor, källorna</i> |
| baahí -da | <i>need behov</i> |
| baahán | <i>needy, in need, hungry behövande, hungrig</i> |

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| beér –ta | <i>field, garden, plantation</i> <i>trädgård, åker, odling</i> |
| beeraa, beertaa | <i>plants, grows</i> <i>planterar, odlar</i> |
| beerfále –ha | <i>farmer</i> <i>jordbruksare</i> |
| galaa, gashaa | <i>enters, goes inside</i> <i>går in</i> |
| geliyaa, gelisaa | <i>inserts, puts inside</i> <i>för in, placerar inuti</i> |
| nadíif –ka | <i>clean thing</i> <i>rent föremål</i> |
| nadiifiyaa, nadiifisaa | <i>cleans, makes clean</i> <i>rengör, gör rent</i> |
| nadaafád –da | <i>cleanliness, hygiene</i> <i>renlighet, hygien</i> |
| sheegaa, sheegtaa | <i>says, tells</i> <i>säger, berättar</i> |
| sheéko –da | <i>story</i> <i>berättelse</i> |

9. Naxwe

Clauses consist of phrases

In order to really understand the Somali sentence structure and word order it is important to understand that a clause consists of phrases. It is necessary to recognise the boundaries between such phrases.

A typical clause consists of

- a VERB PHRASE,
- a PARTICLE PHRASE, and often also
- one or more NOUN PHRASES.

In the verb phrase, besides the predicate verb, we also find the indefinite subject pronoun **la** one, you, the object pronouns, the prepositions and the directional and locational particles.

The directional particles are

- soó** (towards a place/person),
- sií** (away from a place/person),
- wadá** *together* (towards a common spot),
- kalá** *away, apart* (away from a common spot).

The directional particles sometimes have a very concrete meaning, but often the meaning is rather abstract.

In the particle phrase, besides the sentence particles (sentence type particles **waa**, **ma**, **ha...** and focus particles **baa**, **ayaa**, **waxaa**), one also finds the short subject pronouns (**aan**, **aad**, **uu**, **ay**, **aynu**, but not **la** one, you).

In the noun phrase, besides the head noun, one also finds adjectives and other

Satser består av fraser

För att riktigt förstå den somaliska syntaxen och ordföljden är det viktigt att man har klart för sig att en sats är uppbyggd av olika fraser. Man behöver förstå var gränsen mellan dessa fraserna går.

En typisk sats består av

- en VERBFRAS,
- en PARTIKELFRAS, och ofta även
- en eller flera SUBSTANTIVFRASER.

I VERBFRASEN ingår förutom själva predikatsverbet även subjektspronomenet **la man**, objektspronomenen, prepositionerna samt riktnings- och positionspartiklarna.

Riktningspartiklar är

- soó** (mot en plats/person),
- sií** (bort från en plats/person),
- wadá tillsammans** (mot en gemensam punkt),
- kalá iväg, isär** (bort från en gemensam punkt).

Riktningspartiklarna har ibland en mycket konkret betydelse, men många gånger är betydelsen mera abstrakt.

I PARTIKELFRASEN ingår förutom själva satspartiklarna (sats**typ**spartiklarna **waa**, **ma**, **ha...** och fokuspartiklarna **baa**, **ayaa**, **waxaa**) även de korta subjektspronomenen (**aan**, **aad**, **uu**, **ay**, **aynu**, men inte **la man**).

I SUBSTANTIVFRASEN ingår förutom substantivet som är huvudord även

nouns that are modifiers to the head noun. The head noun always comes first.

adjektiv och andra substantiv som är attribut. Huvudordet står alltid först.

The prepositions are found in the verb phrase and from there the point to one of the noun phrases in the clause which as a consequence function as an adverbial complement.

Prepositionerna står alltså i verbfrasen, och därifrån syftar de på en av nominalfrserna i satsen som då fungerar som adverbial.


Wáxa aan < > biyáha < > ká helnaa < > MEELÓ BADAN.

We get water from MANY PLACES. / We find water in MANY PLACES.

Vi får vatten från MÅNGA PLATSER. / Vi hittar vatten på MÅNGA PLATSER.


Wáxa aynu < > guryáha < > kú cunnaa < > CUNTÓ KALA DUWAN.

In the homes we eat DIFFERENT KINDS OF FOOD.

I hemmen äter vi OLIKA MATRÄTTER.

Often there is only one really evident high tone per phrase, while other potential high tones in the phrase are heavily reduced.

Många gånger uttalas bara en riktigt tydlig hög ton per fras, medan övriga möjliga höga toner i frasen uttalas mindre tydligt.

Subclauses with subject word

In subclauses that contain their own subject word or phrase the predicate verb will be in the subjunctive. See § 15.1.

I bisatser som innehåller sitt eget subjektsord eller sin egen subjektsfras står predikatsverbet i konjunktiv. See § 15.1.

Magacow saddex cunto oo kale oo aad ku cunto guriga.

U sheeg fasalka waxa aad biyaha u isticmaasho gurigiinna.

Sawirradani waxa ay ina tusayaan meelaha aynu biyaha ka helno qaarkood.

Sheeg ilaha biyaha ee aad ku aragto sawirrada.

Adverbials of manner

An adverbial of manner that contains the word **si** *manner, way* is connected to the predicate verb by the preposition **u** that corresponds to English *in*.

Sättsadverbial

Sättsadverbial som innehåller substantivet **si** *sätt* binds till verbet i satsen med hjälp av prepositionen **u** motsvarande svenska *på*.

Sideé bay dákta tuulo-jóogga ahi ú nadiifyaan iláha biyáhooda?

In what way (= how) do the villagers keep their sources of water clean?

På vilket sätt (= hur) håller byborna sin vattenkällor ren?

Biyáha waxa aynu ú isticmaalnaa siyaabó kala duwan.

We use water in different ways. | Vatten använder vi på olika sätt.

Verbs of type 3

The stem ends in **-t-** or **-d-** when the ending begins with a vowel.

Verb av typ 3

Stammen slutar med **-t-** eller **-d-** när ändelsen börjar med vokal.

The stem ends in **-a-** when the ending begins with a consonant.

Stammen slutar med **-a-** när ändelsen börjar med konsonant.

The imperative ends in **-o** when there is no ending.

Imperativen slutar på **-o** då det inte finns någon ändelse.

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| | <i>catches</i> | <i>has, holds</i> | <i>visits</i> |
| | <i>fångar</i> | <i>har, håller</i> | <i>besöker</i> |
| 1 sg. / 3 sg. masc. | dabt-aa | hayst-aa | booqd-aa |
| 3 pl. | dabt-aan | hayst-aan | booqd-aan |
| 2 sg. / 3 sg. fem. | daba-taa | haysa-taa | booqa-taa |
| 1 pl. | daba-nnaa | haysa-nnaa | booqa-nnaa |
| infinitive | dabá-n | haysá-n | booqá-n |
| imperative | dabó | haysó | booqó |

/nn/ in 1st & 2nd person pl.

The verb endings in the 1st person plural (-naa, -nay, -no) and the possessive endings in the 1st and 2nd person plural (-eenna, -iinna) contain a double, strong /nn/ if this /nn/ is both preceded and followed by a vowel.

/nn/ i 1:a & 2:a person pl.

Verbändelserna i 1 person plural (-naa, -nay, -no) och de possessiva ändelserna i 1 och 2 person plural (-eenna, -iinna) innehåller dubbelt, dvs. långt /nn/ så snart detta /nn/ både föregås och följs av vokal.

Waa ín aynu ilaalinnaa nadaafádda iláha biyáheenna.

We have to safeguard the hygiene of our water sources.

Vi måste slå vakt om hygienen i våra vattenkällor.

Cuntáda kamá maaranno.

We don't manage without food. | Mat klarar vi oss inte utan.

Modifiers with 'ee' or 'oo'

If there are two modifying words after a noun, the conjunction **ee** should be used before the second modifier if the head noun is in the definite form.

Attribut med 'ee' eller 'oo'

Om det finns två attribut efter ett substantiv används konjunktionen **ee** före det andra attributet om huvudordet står i bestämd form.

Booqó iláha biyáha ee kú dhow dúgsigaaga.

head mod.1 mod.2

Visit the sources of water close to your school.

Besök de vattenkällor som finns nära din skola.

Magaców cuntáda kala duwan' ee sáwirka ká muuqata.

head mod.1 mod.2

Give the names of the different dishes that are shown in the picture.

Namnge de olika maträtter som syns på bilden.

If instead the head noun is indefinite, the conjunction **oo** is used.

Om huvudordet i stället står i obestämd form används konjunktionen **oo**.

Magaców sáddex cunto' oo kale' oo aad kú cunto gúriga.

head mod.1 mod.2 mod. 3

Give the names of three other dishes that you eat at home.

Namnge tre andra maträtter som du äter hemma.

The verb 'is, am, are'

| | |
|----------|-------|
| 1 sg. | ahay |
| 2 sg. | tahay |
| 3 sg. m. | yahay |
| 3 sg. f. | tahay |

Verbet 'är'

| | |
|-------|-------|
| 1 pl. | nahay |
| 2 pl. | tiiin |
| 3 pl. | yiiin |

The use of prepositions

In practically all languages that have preposition, their use is partially unpredictable. Some Somali verbs and adjectives require a specific preposition.

These sentences illustrate some such differences between English and Somali.

Prepositionsbruket

I praktiskt taget alla språk som har prepositioner så är bruket av prepositioner delvis oförutsägbart. Vissa huvudord (främst verb och adjektiv) kräver helt enkelt en viss preposition.

Följande meningar illustrerar en del sådan skillnader mellan svenska och somaliskan.

Waxa aan biyaha ká helnaa meelo badan.

ka > *in*

We *find* water *in* many places.

ka > *på*

Vi *hittar* vatten *på* många ställen.

Booqo ilaha biyaha ee ku dhow dugsigaaga.

ku > *to*

Visit the sources of water *close to* your school.

ku > Ø

Besök de vattenkällorna *nära* din skola.

Waxa aynu u baahan nahay cunto.

u > *of*

We are in *need of* food. = We need food.

u > *av*

Vi är i *behov av* mat. = Vi behöver mat.

Magacow cuntada kala duwan ee sawirka ka muuqata.

ka > *in*

Name different foods that *are visible in* the picture.

ka > *på*

Nämna olika (slags) mat som *syns på* bilden.

Shan shilin waxay ku iibsatay liin.

ku > *for*

For five shillings she *bought* a citrus.

ku > *för*

För fem shilling *köpte* hon en citrusfrukt.

Consequently, it is important to learn the correct preposition together with each verb and adjective.

Det är alltså viktigt att lära in rätt preposition tillsammans med varje verb och adjektiv.

9. Layliyo

Online: [7.1 Horyaalayaasha \(1\)](#)

Online: [7.2 Horyaalayaasha \(2\)](#)

Online: [7.3 Magacuyaallada yeelaha ah](#)

Online: [7.4 Joogto fudud](#)

Grammar Questions

Question 1.

Find as many sentences as possible in Unit 9 that contain a preposition. In many cases the preposition has been contracted with another word. If so, tell the constituent parts of the contraction.

Then, for each preposition tell the noun or noun phrase that it points to (refers to). Give an English translation of the preposition and the noun phrase. Put the number of the text before each example. E.g.

9.1 Waxa aan biyaha ka helnaa meelo badan.

ka + meelo badan, literally: *from many places*, idiomatically: *in many places*

Question 2.

Find as many relative clauses as possible in Unit 9.

Mark the head noun that the relative clause refers to with boldface.

Underline the relative clause. Translate the head word and the relative subclause into English. Make the translation rather literal and less idiomatic if necessary. Put the number of the text before each example.

E.g.

9.2 Sidee bay **dadka** tuulo-joogga ahi u nadiifiyaan ilaha biyahooda?
'the people that are village-dwellers'

9. Tone-marked texts

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455530>

9. Translations

1. Ilaha biyaha
Water sources
Vattenkällor
2. Waxa aan biyaha ka helnaa meelo badan.
We find water in many places.
Vi hittar vatten på många platser.
3. Meelahaas waxa la yidhaahdaa ilaha biyaha.
Those places are called water sources.
De (**där**) platserna kallas man / kallas vattenkällor.
de där platserna - så säger man nog inte på svenska. Här handlar det inte om att peka på platserna i verkligheten, utan om att peka tillbaka på föregående mening, och olika språk gör detta på lite olika sätt. Det viktiga är att översättningen låter idiomatisk och bra.
4. Eeg sawirradan.
Look at these pictures.
Titta på de här bilderna.
5. Kulligood waa ilaha biyaha.
All of them are sources of water.
De är alla vattenkällor.
6. Halkee bay biyaha dugsigiinnu ka yimaaddaan?
Where does the water in your school come from?
Varifrån kommer vattnet i er skola?
7. Booqo ilaha biyaha ee ku dhow dugsigaaga.
Visit water sources near your school.
Besök vattenkällor nära din skola.
8. Ilaalinta nadaafadda ilaha biyaha
Safeguarding of the hygiene of the water sources.
Skydd av renligheten hos vattenkällorna
When several nouns in a row are modifiers of a preceding noun one sometimes has to make a real effort to find an idiomatic translation, instead of just inserting the preposition *of* between the nouns: *the protection of the hygiene of the sources of the water*.
9. Ma nadiif baa ilaha biyaha?
Are the water sources clean?
Är vattenkällorna rena?
10. Sidee bay dadka tuulo-joogga ahi u nadiifiyaan ilaha biyahooda?
How do people living in villages keep their water sources clean?
Hur håller byborna sina vattenkällor rena?
11. Waa in aynu ilaalinnaa nadaafadda ilaha biyaheenna.
We have to safeguard the cleanliness of our water sources.
Vi måste slå vakt om hygienen i våra vattenkällor.

12. Qor saddex ka mid ah ilaha biyaha.

Write (down) three of the water sources.

Skriv (ner) tre (som är en) av vattenkällorna.

Skriv tre exempel på vattenkällor.

13. Maxaa aynu u isticmaalnaa biyaha guryaheenna?

What do we use water for in our homes?

Vad använder vi vattnet till i våra hus / hem?

14. Baahiyaha qoyska

The needs of the family

Familjens behov

15. Waxa aynu u baahan nahay cunto.

We are in need of food. / We need food.

Vi har behov av mat. / Vi behöver mat.

16. Cuntada kama maaranno.

We do not manage without food.

Vi klarar oss inte utan mat.

17. Cuntadu xoog baa ay inoo yeeshaa.

Food makes/causes strength for us. / Food makes us strong.

Maten åstadkommer styrka åt oss. / Maten gör oss starka.

18. Cuntadu waxa ay jidhkeenna gelisaa caafimaad.

Food gives (lit. inserts) health to our body. / Food keeps our body healthy.

Maten tillför vår kropp hälsa.

19. Magacow cuntada kala duwan ee sawirka ka muuqata.

Name the different foods that can be seen in the picture.

Namnge/Nämnd de olika rätter som syns på bilden.

20. Waxa aynu guryaha ku cunnaa cunto kala duwan.

We eat different kinds of food / a variety of foods at home.

Hemma äter vi olika sorters mat.

21. Adigu kuwee baa aad cuntadan soo cuntay?

Which of these foods/dishes did you eat?

Vilken av de här maträtena har du ätit?

22. Halkee baa aad ka heshaa cuntada?

Where do you find food? Where do you get (the) food from?

Varifrån får du mat(en)?

cuntada is a generic definite form, referring to food in general. It is most often translated with the indefinite form.

23. Magacow saddex cunto oo kale oo aad ku cunto guriga.

Name three other types of food you eat at home.

Namnge/Nämnd tre andra typer av mat som du äter hemma.

24. Baahida biyaha

The need of water

Behovet av vatten.

25. Waxa aynu u baahan nahay biyo.

We are in need of water. / We need water.

Vi är i behov av vatten. / Vi behöver vatten.

26. Biyaha kama maaranno.

We do not manage without water.

Vi klarar oss inte utan vatten.

27. Biyaha waxa aynu u isticmaalnaa siyaabo kala duwan.
 We use water in different kinds of ways.
 Vi använder vattnet på olika sätt.
28. Sidee baa ay dadka sawirrada ka muuqdaa u isticmaalaan biyaha?
 How do the people (seen) in the pictures use the water?
 Hur använder människorna som syns på bilderna vattnet?
29. U sheeg fasalka **waxa** aad biyaha u isticmaasho gurigiinna.
 Tell the class **what** you use water for at your home.
 Berätta för klassen **vad** du använder vatten till i ert hem.
- wáxa the thing:** Somali **wáxa** is used as the equivalent of English *what* introducing a subclause, e.g. *tell the thing you use* = *tell what you use*. See § 15.2.4. (*berätta saken du använder* = *berätta vad du använder*)
30. Xaggee baa aynu biyaha ka soo helnaa?
 From where do we get water? Where do we find water?
 Varifrån får vi vattnet?
31. Sawirradani waxa ay ina tusayaan meelaha aynu biyaha ka helno qaarkood.
 These pictures show us some of the places that we get water from.
 / ... tha places where we find water.
 De här bilderna visar oss några av platserna som vi får vatten från.
 / ...platserna där vi hittar vatten.
32. Meelahan waxa loo yaqaan ilaha biyaha.
 These places are known as water sources.
 De här platserna känner man till som vattenkällor. / ...är kända som vattenkällor. / ... kallas vattenkällor.
33. Sheeg ilaha biyaha ee aad ku aragto sawirrada.
 Tell the water sources you see in the pictures.
 Berätta de vattenkällor som du ser på bilderna.
34. Xayawaannada waxtarka leh
 Useful animals (aminals having use)
 Nyttiga djur (djur som har nytta)
35. Dameeruhu waa xayawaanno waxtar leh.
 (The) donkeys are useful animals.
 Åsnor(na) är nyttiga djur.
36. Waxa ay inoo qaadaan rarka culus.
 They carry heavy loads for us.
 De bär tung last för oss.
37. Riyuhu waa xayaawanno waxtar leh.
 (The) goats are useful animals.
 Getter(na) är nyttiga djur.
38. Waxa aynu ka helnaa caano.
 We get milk from them.
 Vi får mjölk från dem.
39. Maxaa kale ee aynu ka helnaa riyaha?
 What else do we get from goats?
 Vad mer (annat) får vi från getterna?
40. Lo'du waa xayawaan waxtar leh.
 (The) dairy cattle is a useful animal.
 Nötboskap är ett nyttigt djur.
lo' is a collective noun.

xayawaan is both a singular noun and a collective noun, which means that ‘several animals’ may be expressed both through the plural form **xayawaanno** and the collective (singular) form **xayawaan**.

41. Maxaa aynu ka helnaa?
What do we get from it?
Vad får vi från det?
42. Dibigu waa xayawaan waxtar leh.
The bull is a useful animal.
Tjuren/Oxen är ett nyttigt djur.
43. Maxaa uu inoo qabtaa?
What does it do for us?
Vad gör/utgör den för oss?
inoo is an obligatory contraction of **ina+u**
44. Kalluunku waa xayawaan waxtar leh.
The fish is a useful animal
Fisken är ett nyttigt djur.
45. Qoyskiinnu ma cunaa kalluun?
Does your family eat fish?
Äter er familj fisk?
46. Shinnidu waa cayayaan waxtar leh.
The bee is a useful insect.
Biet är en nyttig insekt.
47. Maxaa aynu ka helnaa?
What do we get from it?
Vad får vi från det?
48. Shimbiraha qaar baa ah xayawaan waxtar leh.
Some birds are useful animals.
En del fåglar är nyttiga djur.
49. Maxaa aynu ka helnaa?
What do we get from them? (i.e. from the birds)
Vad får vi från dem?
50. Awrta waa xayawaanno waxtar leh.
Camels are useful animals.
Kameler(na) är nyttiga djur.
51. Sidee bay inoo caawiyaan?
How do they help us?
Hur hjälper de oss?
52. Magacow dhammaan xayawaannada aad taqaanid.
Name all the animals you know.
Namnge/Nämnn alla de djur som du känner till.
53. Magacow xayawaannada waxtarka leh.
Name useful animals.
Nämnn/Namnge de nyttiga djuren.
54. Xisaab
Mathematics
Matematik
55. Cali wuxuu haystaa afar buug.
Ali has four books.
Ali har fyra böcker.

56. Caashana waxay haysataa saddex buug.
And Asha has three books.
Och Asha har tre böcker.
57. Waa immisa tirada buugaagta ay haystaan Cali iyo Caasha?
How large is the amount of books that Ali and Asha have?
Hur stort är antalet böcker som Ali och Asha har?
58. Geeddi aabbihiis waxa uu haystaa laba sac.
Gedi's father has two cows.
Gedis pappa har två kor.
59. Guuleedna reerkoodu wuxuu leeyahay saddex sac.
And Guled's family has three cows.
Och Guleds famlij har tre kor.
60. Immisa sac ayaa ay leeyihiin labadaas reer?
How many cows do these two families have?
Hur många kor har de (där) två/båda familjerna?
61. Waxay Caasha haysataa saddex iyo labaatan shilin.
Asha has twenty-three shillings.
Asha har tjugotre shilling.
62. Ku biiri lix iyo soddon shilin.
Add thirty-six shillings.
Lägg till trettiosex shilling.
63. Waa immisa wadartu?
How much is the sum?
Hur mycket är summan?
64. Yuusuf wuxuu cunay shalay saddex xabbo oo muus ah.
Yusuf ate three bananas yesterday.
Yusuf åt tre stycken bananer igår.
65. Maanta wuxuu cunay labo xabbo oo muus ah.
Today he ate two bananas.
Idag har han ätit två stycken bananer.
66. Immisa muus ah ayuu cunay Cali maanta iyo shalay?
How many bananas did Ali eat today and yesterday?
Hur många bananer har Ali ätit idag och igår?
67. Waa immisa wadarta saddex iyo lix?
What is the sum of three and six?
Hur mycket är summan av tre och sex?
68. Maxaw wuxuu soo dabtay shan kalluun.
Mahau caught five fish.
Mahaw har fångat fem fiskar.
69. Jaamacna wuxuu soo dabtay afar kalluun.
And Jama caught four fish.
Och Jama har fångat fyra fiskar.
70. Immisa kalluun ayey soo dabteen?
How many fish did they catch?
Hur många fiskar har de fångat?
71. Cumar wuxuu beeray saddex geed.
Omar planted three trees.
Omar har planterat tre träd.

72. Axmedna wuxuu beeray toddoba geed.
 And Ahmed planted seven trees.
 Och Ahmed har planterat sju träd.
73. Immisa geed ayey beereen Cumar iyo Axmed?
 How many trees did Omar and Ahmed plant?
 Hur många träd har Omar och Ahmed planterat?
74. Cabdi wuxuu haystaa laba qalin.
 Abdi has two pens.
 Abdi har två pennor.
75. Caashana waxay haysataa saddex qalin.
 And Asha has three pens.
 Och Asha har tre pennor.
76. Faadumana waxay haysataa afar qalin.
 And Faadumo has four pens.
 Och Faduma har fyra pennor.
77. Tirada qalimmada ay Cabdi, Caasha iyo Faaduma haystaan waa sagaal.
 The number of pens that Abdi, Asha and Faadumo have is nine.
 Antalet pennor som Abdi, Asha och Faduma har är nio.
78. Cali wuxuu haystaa sagaal buug,
 Ali has nine books,
 Ali har nio böcker,
79. walaashiisna waxay haysataa lix buug.
 and his sister has six books.
 och hans syster har sex böcker.
80. Immisa ayay wada haystaan labadoodu?
 How much do the both have?
 Hur många har de båda (två) tillsammans?
81. Caasha waxay haysatay toddoba nacnac ah.
 Asha had seven candies.
 Asha hade sju karameller.
82. Waxay cuntay labo.
 She ate two.
 Hon åt (upp) två.
83. Immisa ayaa **u** hartay?
 How many remained **for her**? How many did she have left?
 Hur många återstod för henne? Hur många hade hon kvar?
84. Fasal baa waxaa ku jira siddeed iyo tobant arday.
 There are eighteen students in a class
 I ett klassrum finns det arton elever.
 This sentence contains two focus particles. This sometimes happens,
 especially when both the focused nouns are indefinite and not previously
 known to the listener. In such instances one is always either **ayaa** or **baa**, and
 the other is **waxa(a)**.
85. Sagaal waa gabdho.
 Nine are girls.
 Nio är flickor.
86. Immisa wiil ayaa fasalka ku jira?
 How many boys are there in class?
 Hur många pojkar finns det i klassen?

87. Faadumo waxay haysatay siddeed shilin.
 Faduma had eight shillings.
 Faduma hade åtta shilling.
88. Shan shilin waxay ku iibsatay liin.
 For five shillings she bought lemon(s).
 För fem shilling köpte hon citrusfrukt.
89. Immisa shilin baa **u** soo hartay?
 How many shillings were left **for her?** / ... did she have left?
 Hur många shilling återstod för henne? / ... hade hon kvar?
90. Cabdi wuxuu haystay afar shilin.
 Abdi had four shillings.
 Abdi hade fyra shilling.
91. Aabbihiis wuxuu siiyey shan shilin,
 His father gave him five shillings,
 (He gave his father five shillings,)
 Hans pappa gav honom fem shilling,
 (Han gav sin pappa fem shilling.)
 The word **Aabbihiis** can be either the subject or the object of this clause, but
 the context strongly suggests that it is the subject, and that Cabdi is the
 object. There is however no object pronoun, since Somali doesn't have
 object pronouns corresponding to *him, her, it, them.*
92. hooyadiisna waxay siisay toddoba shilin.
 and his mother gave him seven shillings.
 och hans mamma gav honom sju shilling.
93. Immisa shilin buu Cabdi haystaa hadda?
 How many shillings does Abdi have now?
 Hur många shilling har Abdi nu?

9. Solutions

Grammar questions

1. Prepositions

- 7.1 Halkee bay biyaha dugsigiinnu ka yimaaddaan?
 halkee + ka 'from where?
 Booqo ilaha biyaha ee ku dhow dugsigaaga.
 ku + dugsigaaga 'to your school'
- 7.2 Sidee bay dadka tuulo-joogga ahi u nadiifiyaan ilaha biyahooda?
 sidee + u 'in what manner/way?, how?'
 Qor saddex ka mid ah ilaha biyaha.
 ka+ilaha biyaha 'of the water sources'
 Maxaa aynu u isticmaalnaa biyaha guryaheenna?
 maxaa + u 'for what?'
- 7.3 Waxa aynu u baahan nahay cunto.
 u + cunto 'for food' (as in 'needy/need for food')
 Cuntada kama maaranno.
 cuntada + ka 'from/without food' (as in 'manage without')
 Cuntadu xoog baa ay inoo yeeshaa.

Inoo = ina+u ‘for us’
Magacow cuntada kala duwan ee sawirka ka muuqata.
sawirka + ka ‘from/in the picture’
Waxa aynu guryaha ku cunnaa unto kala duwan.
guryaha + ku ‘in the homes/at home’
Halkee baa aad ka heshaa cuntada?
halkee + ka ‘from where’
Magacow saddex unto oo kale oo aad ku unto guriga.
ku+guriga ‘at home’
7.4 Waxa aynu u baahan nahay biyo.
u+biyo ‘for water’
Biyaha kama maaranno
biyaha ka ‘from/without water’
Biyaha waxa aynu u isticmaalnaa siyaabo kala duwan.
u + siyaabo kala duwan ‘in different ways’
Sidee baa ay dadka sawirrada ka muuqdaa u isticmaalaan biyaha?
sidee + u ‘in what manner/way?, how’
sawirrada + ka ‘in the pictures’
U sheeg fasalka waxa aad biyaha u isticmaasho gurigiinna.
u + fasalka ‘to/for the class’
waxa + u ‘the thing/what ... for’
Xaggee baa aynu biyaha ka soo helnaa?
xaggee + ka ‘from where’
Sawirradani waxa ay ina tusayaan meelaha aynu biyaha ka helno qaarkood.
meelaha + ka ‘the places from which’
(meelaha + qaarkood ‘some of the places’)
Meelahan waxa loo yaqaan ilaha biyaha.
Loo ← la+u
u+ilaha biyaha ‘as water sources’
Sheeg ilaha biyaha ee aad ku aragto sawirrada.
ku+sawirrada ‘in the pictures’
7.5 Waxa ay inoo qaadaan rarka culus.
inoo=ina+u ‘for us’
Waxa aynu ka helnaa caano.
ka ‘from them’
Maxaa kale ee aynu ka helnaa riyaha?
ka + riyaha ‘from (the) goats’
Maxaa aynu ka helnaa?
ka ‘from them’
Maxaa uu inoo qabtaa?
Inoo ← ina+u ‘for us’
Sidee bay inoo caawiyaan?
sidee + u ‘in what manner/way?, how?’
7.6 Ku biiri lix iyo soddon shilin.
ku ‘to it (i.e. add 36 shillings to the previous amount)
Immisa ayaa u hartay?
u ‘for her’
Fasal baa waxaa ku jira siddeed iyo tobant arday.
fasal + ku ‘in a class’
Immisa wiil ayaa fasalka ku jira?

fasalka + ku 'in the class'
Shan shilin waxay ku iibsatay liin.
shan shilin + ku 'for five shillings'
Immisa shilin baa u soo hartay?
u 'for her'

2. Relative clauses

- 7.1 Booqo **ilaha** biyaha ee ku dhow dugsigaaga.
'sources ... that are close to your school'
- 7.2 Sidee bay **dadka** tuulo-joogga ahi u nadiifiyaan ilaha biyahooda?
'the people that are village-dwellers'
Qor **saddex** ka mid ah ilaha biyaha.
'three (that are one) of the water sources'
- 7.3 Magacow **cuntada** kala duwan ee sawirka ka muuqata.
'the ... food(s) which are shown in the picture'
Magacow **saddex** cunto oo kale oo aad ku cunto guriga.
'three ... that you eat at home'
- 7.4 Sidee baa ay **dadka** sawirrada ka muuqdaa u isticmaalaan biyaha?
'the people that are shown in the pictures'
- Sawirradani waxa ay ina tusayaan **meelaha** aynu biyaha ka helno qaarkood.
'the places we get water from'
- Sheeg **ilaha** biyaha ee aad ku aragto sawirrada.
'sources ... you see in the pictures'
- 7.5 Magacow dhammaan **xayawaannada** aad taqaanid.
'the animals you know'
- 7.6 Waa immisa tirada **buugaagta** ay haystaan Cali iyo Caasha?
'the books that Ali and Asha have'
- Tirada **qalimmada** ay Cabdi, Caasha iyo Faaduma haystaan waa sagaal. '
'the pens that Abdi, Asha and Faduma have'

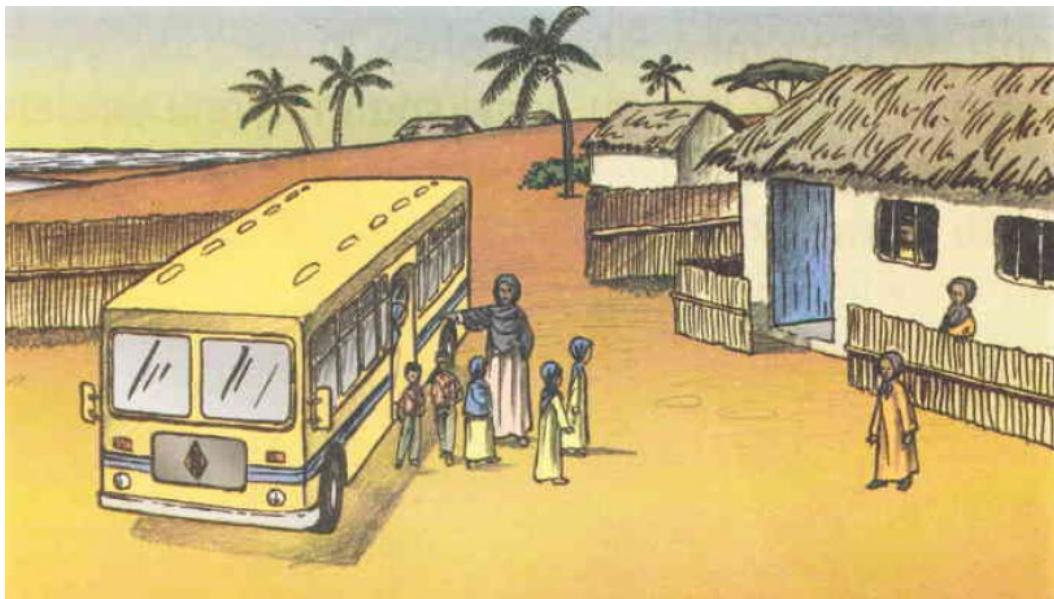
Cutubka 10aad

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455531>

10.1 Booqasho dugsi kale

Kani waa Rooble iyo ardaydii
fasalkooda oo soo booqday Saynab
dugsigooda ee xeebta ku yaalla.

ardaý -da coll. students | elever,
studenter
soó particle that expresses
(1) movement towards a place, or
(2) completion of an action
booqdaa, booqataa visits | besöker



Rooble dugsigoodu waxa uu ku dhex
yaallaa magaalo weyn. Hadda waxa uu
booqanayaa beel ku nool badda
agteeda. Waxa uu halkan ka baran
doonaa sida ay dadka xeebtu u soo
dabtaan kalluunka.

Waxyaabo badan baa aynu ka baran
karnaa marka aynu soo booqanno
dugsi kale. Waxyaabo badan baa aynu

beel -sha community | en grupp
människor som lever tillsammans

sida ... u the manner ... in which,
how | sättet ... på, hur
dabtaa, dabataa hunts, catches |
jagar, fångar
aynu we (inclusive) | vi (inklu-
derande)

ku aragnaa waddada. Waxa aynu soo ogaannaa waxa ay qabtaan dadka ku nool dugsiga agagaarkiisa. Waxa aynu barannaa farqiga u dhixeeeya dadka labada deegaan.

Weligaa ma booqatay dugsi kale?

U sheeg fasalka waxa aad ku sii aragtay waddada.

wáddo -áda road | väg
soó ogaadaa gets to know | får vet
qabtaa, qabataa does | gör, sysslar
med
agagaár -ka surrounding |
omgivning
fárqi -ga difference | skillnad
ú dhixeeyaa exists between | finns
mellan
welígaa you...ever | du...någonsin

sií a particle that expresses
(1) movement away from a place
or (2) continuation of an action
ku sii ... waddada along the
road | längs vägen

Cilmiga Bulshada 2, Muqdisho 2011: 41

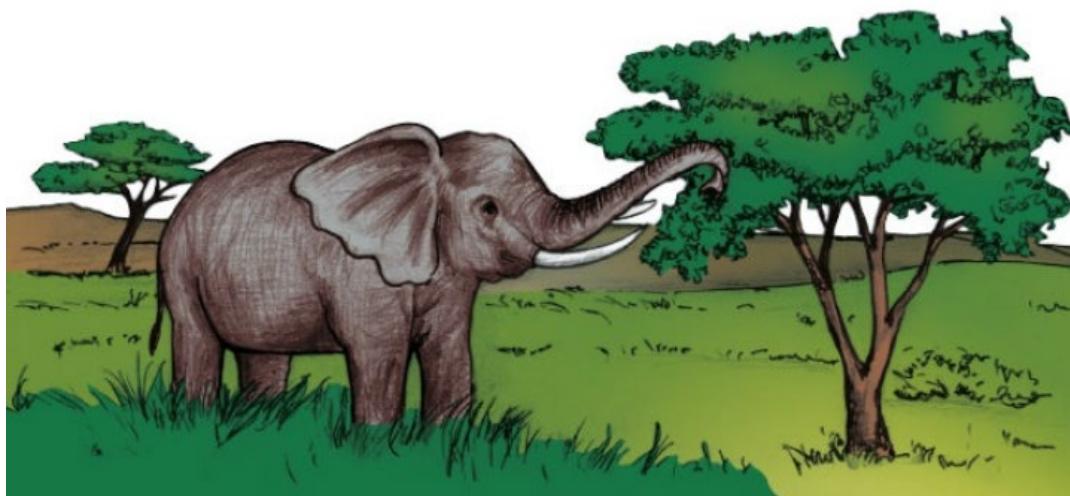
10.2 Maroodi

Maroodigu waa xayawaan weyn.

Waxa uu leeyahay midab madow-xigeen ah. Waxa uu leeyahay san dheer iyo laba dhegood oo waaweyn. Waxa aan ku magacawnaa sankiisa gacanka maroodiga.

léeyahay, léedahay has | har

waawéyn (distributive form of
wéyn) big, large | stora

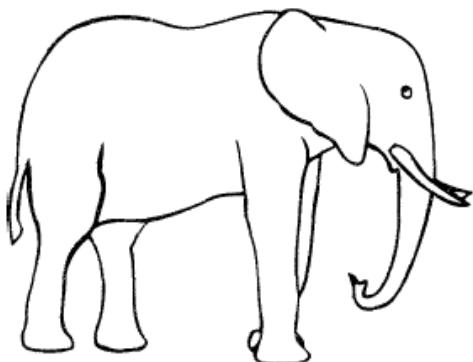


Maroodigu waxa uu ku nool yahay
kaymaha. Waxa uu isticmaalaa
gacankiisa marka uu cunayo
caleemaha geedaha.

Weydiimo

Ka jawaab su'aalahan.

1. Maroodigu midabkee ayuu
leeyahay?
2. Maxaan ku magacawnaa sanka
maroodiga?
3. Maroodigu muxuu u isticmaalaa
sankiisa?
4. Maaroodigu muxuu cunaa?



Sawirkan ku muuji qaybihiisa.

muúji (imp.) *show | visa*

Isticmaal erayadan: dheg, gacan, il iyo
sayn.

Af-Soomaali 2, Muqdisho 2001: 105–106

10.6 Xisaab

Cali wuxuu haystaa afar buug.
Caashana waxay haysataa saddex
buug.
Waa immisa tirada buugaagta ay
haystaan Cali iyo Caasha?

wúxuu / wuxúu = waxa(a) uu
final focus + he/it | slutfokus +
han/den/det

Geeddi aabbihiis waxa uu haystaa
laba sac.
Guuleedna reerkoodu wuxuu leeyahay
saddex sac.
Immisa sac ayaa ay leeyihiiin labadaas
reer?

Waxay Caasha haysataa saddex iyo
labaatan shilin.
Ku biiri lix iyo soddon shilin.
Waa immisa wadartu?

kú biíri (imp.) add | lägg till

Yuusuf wuxuu cunay shalay saddex
xabbo oo muus ah.
Maanta wuxuu cunay laba xabbo oo
muus ah.
Immisa muus ah ayuu cunay Cali
maanta iyo shalay?

shálay -da yesterday | gården,
igår
xáppo -da (Ar.) piece; seed, grain |
styck; frö, korn

maánta (adv.) today | idag

Waa immisa wadarta saddex iyo lix?
Maxaw wuxuu soo dabtay shan
kalluun.
Jaamacna wuxuu soo dabtay afar

kalluun.

Immisa kalluun ayey soo dabteen?

Cumar wuxuu beeray saddex geed.

Axmedna wuxuu beeray toddoba
geed.

Immisa geed ayey beereen Cumar iyo
Axmed?

Cabdi wuxuu haystaa laba qalin.

Caashana waxay haysataa saddex
qalin.

Faadumana waxay haysataa afar qalin.

Tirada qalimmada ay Cabdi, Caasha
iyo Faaduma haystaan waa sagaal.

Cali wuxuu haystaa sagaal buug,
walaashiisna waxay haysataa lix buug.

Immisa ayay wada haystaan
labadoodu?

beeraa, beertaa *grows, cultivates* |
planterar, odlar

qálin -ka, pl. qalimmó (Ar.) *pen* |
penna

Caasha waxay haysatay toddoba
nacnac ah.

Waxay cuntay labo.

Immisa ayaa u hartay?

wadá (adv.) *together* | *tillsammans*

nácnac -a (Ar.) *candy, sweets* |
godis, karameller

ú haraa, hartaa *remains* fro
someone, is left | återstår för ngn,
finns kvar

Fasal baa waxaa ku **jira** siddeed iyo
toban arday.

Sagaal waa gabdho.

Immisa wiil ayaa fasalka ku **jira**?

Faadumo waxay haysatay siddeed
shilin.

*Shan shilin waxay ku iibsatay liin.
Immisa shilin baa u soo hartay?*

*Cabdi wuxuu haystay afar shilin.
Aabbihiis wuxuu siiyey shan shilin,
hooyadiisna waxay siisay toddoba
shilin.
Immisa shilin buu Cabdi haystaa
hadda?*

Wadahadallo 38–39

38.2

- Ma Carab baa tahay?
- Haa. Carab baan ahay.
- Ma Sacuudi Carabiyaad ku nooshahay?
- Maya, kuma nooli.
- Xaggeed ku nooshahay?
- Cadanaan ku nool ahay.

Carabiyaad = Carabiya baad

Cadanaan = Cadan baan

38.3

- Adigu xaggeed ka timid?
- Soomaaliyaan ka imid.
- Ma magaaladaad ku nooshahay?
- Haa. Muqdishaan ku nool ahay.

Soomaaliyaan = Soomaaliya
ayaa aan

Muqdishaan = Muqdisho
ayaa aan

39.0

- Aabbahaa iyo hooyadaa ma magaalay ku nool yihiin?
- Haa. Magaalay ku nool yihiin.

aabbáhaa your father | din far
hooyádaa your mother | din
mor
magaalay = magaalo ayaa ay
kú nóol living in | boende i
yihiin they are | de är

39.1

- Aabbahaa iyo hooyadaa ma magaalay ku nool yihiin?
- Haa. Magaalay ku nool yihiin.
- Adigu ma Soomaaliyaa tahay mise Sawaaxili mise Xabashi?
- Soomaali baan ahay.

Soomaaliyaa = Soomaali

Soomaaliyaan = Soomaali
baan ahay

39.2

- Adigu Sawaaxiliga ma jeceshahay?
- Haa. Waan jeclahay.
- Ma Xabashiyaa tahay?
- Haa, Xabashiyaan ahay.

Xabashiyaa = Xabashi baa

Xabashiyaan = Xabashi baan

39.3

- Iska warran.
- Nabad.
- Ma magaalay ku nool yihiin aabbahaa iyo
hooyadaa?
- Haa, Berberay ku nool yihiin.

Berberay = Berbera ayaa ay

Beginning in Somali (1966: 100–103)

10. Erayo cusub

Quizlet 2.08, Somali-English:

Quizlet 2.08, somaliska-svenska:

10. Naxwe

Main clause verb form

| | POSITIVE | NEGATIVE |
|------------------|---|---|
| PAST | -ay / -een | má C-in má heesin V-n(in) má fiiirin(in) |
| PROGRESSIVE PAST | -ayay etc. -ayeen etc. | má -ay-n(in) má heésayn(in) má fiiirinayn(in) |

10. Layliyo

10.1 Layli – Tagto

Change these clauses into (a) positive past tense and (b) negative past tense.

2. Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.

3. Waxa aan dhigtaa fasalka labaad.

NB. group 3 verb: dhigt-aa, dhiga-taa, stem: dhiga-

4. Hooyo cunto ayaa ay karinaysaa.

5. Aabbe beerta ayaa uu falayaa.

6. Safiya waxa ay siddaa biyo.

7. Aamina waxa ay la socotaa Safiya.

NB. group 3 verb: socd-aa, socio-taa, stem: socio-

8. Waxa ay tagayaan guriga.

9. Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga.

10. Waxa ay u socotaa guriga.

10.2 Translate into Somali

There are two main types of relative subclauses:

1.

HEAD NOUN + subj.pron. + (subj. noun) + verb in present subjunctive

Waa immisa tirada **buugaagta ay haystaan Cali iyo Caasha?**

Tirada **qalimmada ay Cabdi, Caasha iyo Faaduma haystaan** waa sagaal.

2.

If the head noun is also the subject of the subclause, i.e. there is no “additional” subject in the subclause.

HEAD NOUN + reduced present tense verb form

-a m.sg. + plural

-ta f.sg.

irregular reduced invariant forms: ah, leh

Magacow **cuntada kala duwan ee sawirka ka muuqata.**

‘the ... food(s) which are shown in the picture’

Translate:

1. Give me the **book** that I am reading.

2. Give me a **book** that you like.

3. Sahra likes the **car** that Maryan owns/has.

4. We will visit the **school** that these children study at. (...where these children study)
5. They are looking at the **cat** that is sleeping on the table.
6. I like the children that study at this school.
7. She lives in a city that is situated at the coast.
8. He has a sister that is a teacher.

10. Tone-marked texts

LISTEN AT <https://canvas.gu.se/courses/26872/modules/items/455531>

10. Translations

37.0

– Xasan, adigu xaggee baad ku nooshahay?

Hassan, where do you live?

Hassan, var bor du?

– Waxaan ku nool ahay Soomaaliya.

I live in Somalia.

Jag bor i Somalia

37.1

– Caliyow, xaggee baad ku dhalatay?

Ali, where were you bown?

Ali, var är du född? (Var föddes du?)

– Waxaan ku dhashay Muqdisho.

I was born in Mogadishu.

Jag är född i Mogadishu. (föddes)

– Xasan, adigu xaggee baad ku nooshahay?

Hassan, where do you live?

Hassan, var bor du?

– Waxaan ku nool ahay Boorame.

I live in Borama.

Jag bor i Borame.

37.2

– Iska warran.

How are you?

Hur mår du.

– Nabad.

Fine.

Det är bra.

– Waxaan ku nool ahay Burco.

I live in Burao.

Jag bor i Burao.

Adigu xaggee baad ku nooshahay?

Where do you live?

Var bor du?

– Iglan baan ku nool ahay.

I live in England.

Jag bor i England.

37.3

– Xaggee baad ka timid?

Where are you from?

Varifrån kommer du / är du? (eg. har kommit)

– Waxaan ka imid Ruushka.

I am from Russia.

Jag kommer / är från Ryssland. (har kommit)

– Ma Ruushka baa ku nooshahay?

Do you live in Russia?

Bor du i Ryssland?

– Maya, Itoobiya baan ku nool ahay.

No, I live in Ethiopia.

Nej, jag bor i Etiopien.

38.0

– Ma magaalo baad ku nooshahay?

Do you live in a city?

Bor du i en stad?

– Maya. Magaalo kuma nooli.

No. I don't live in a city.

Nej. Jag bor inte i en stad.

38.1

38.2

– Ma Carab baa tahay?

Are you Arab?

Är du arab?

– Haa. Carab baan ahay.

Yes. I'm Arab.

Ja, jag är arab.

– Ma Sacuudi Carabiya baad ku nooshahay?

Do you live in Saudi Arabia?

Bor du i Saudiarabien?

– Maya, **kuma nooli**.

No, I don't live **there**.

Nej, jag bor inte **där**.

– Xaggee baad ku nooshahay?

Where do you live?

Var bor du?

– Cadan baan ku nool ahay.

I live in Aden

Jag bor i Aden.

38.3

39.0

39.1

– Aabbahaa iyo hooyadaa ma magaalo bay ku nool yihiin?

Do your father and mother live in a city?

Bor din far och din mor i en stad?

– Haa. Magaalo bay ku nool yihiin.

Yes. They live in a city.

Ja. De bor i en stad.

– Adigu ma Soomaali baa tahay mise Sawaaxili mise Kabashi?

Are you Somali or Swahili or Ethiopian?

Är du somalier eller swahilier eller etiopier?

– Soomaali baan ahay.

I'm a Somali.

Jag är somalier.

39.2

39.3

8.1 Booqasho dugsi kale

Visiting another school

Besök i en annan skola

Kani waa Rooble iyo ardaydii fasalkooda oo soo booqday Saynab dugsigooda ee xeebta ku yaalla.

This is Roble and the pupils in his (their) class who visited Zeinab's school which is situated at the coast.

Detta är Roble och eleverna i hans (deras) klass som besökte Saynabs skola som ligger vid kusten.

Since Roble is not the only "owner" of the class, it sounds odd say *his class* in Somali. You also say things like *our family, our school* rather than *my family, my school* etc. The same is true for Saynab's school.

Rooble dugsigoodu waxa uu ku dhex yaallaa magaalo weyn.

Roble's school is located in a large city.

Robles skola ligger inne i en stor stad.

Hadda waxa uu booqanayaa beel ku nool badda agteeda.

Now he is visiting a community that lives by the sea.

Nu besöker han (människorna i) ett samhälle (som bor) vid havet.

Waxa uu halkan ka baran doonaa sida ay dadka xeebu u soo dabtaan kalluunka.

Here he will learn how the people of the coast catch the fish.

Här kommer han att (få) lära sig hur kustborna fångar fisk.

Waxyabo badan baa aynu ka baran karnaa marka aynu soo booqanno dugsi kale.

There are many things we can learn when we visit another school.

Vi kan lära oss många saker när vi besöker en annan skola.

Waxyabo badan baa aynu ku aragnaa waddada.

We see many things on the road.

Vi ser många saker på / längs vägen.

Waxa aynu soo ogaannaa **waxa** ay qabtaan dadka ku nool dugsiga agagaarkiisa.

We find out / get to know **what** the people do who live in the school's neighbourhood.

Vi får veta **vad** människorna som bor i skolans omgivning gör/sysslar med.

the thing they do = what they do

saken de gör = vad de gör/sysslar med

the second **waxa** in this sentence is not a focus particle, but the definite form of the noun **wax** functioning as a noun that introduces a subclause. It is

usually translated into Swedish and English with the question word *what/vad*.

Waxa aynu barannaa farqiga u dhxeeeya dadka labada deegaan.

We learn the difference(s) between the people of the two communities / regions.

Vi lär oss skillnaden(-erna) som finns mellan folk i de båda samhällena / regionerna.

Weligaa ma booqatay dugsi kale?

Have you ever visited another school?

Har du någonsin besökt en annan skola?

U sheeg fasalka waxa aad ku sii aragtay waddada.

Tell the class what you saw on the road.

Berätta för klassen vad du såg på vägen.

8.2 Maroodi

Elephant

Elefant(en)

Maroodigu waa xayawaan weyn.

The elephant is a big animal.

Elefanten är ett stort djur.

Waxa uu leeyahay midab madow-xigeen ah.

It has a black-brown color (lit. a colour close to dark/black).

Den har en brunsvart färg (eg. en nära mörk/svart färg).

Waxa uu leeyahay san dheer iyo labo dhegood oo waaweyn.

It has a long nose and two big ears.

Den har en lång nos och två stora öron.

Waxa aan ku magacawnaa sankiisa gacanka maroodiga.

We call its nose an elephant trunk.

Vi kallar (eg. benämner) dess nos (för) elefantsnabel.

Notice the important difference between:

trunk/snabel = gácan-ka

hand, arm = gacán-ta

Maroodigu waxa uu ku nool yahay kaymaha.

The elephant lives in (the) forests.

Elefanten lever i skogar(na).

Waxa uu isticmaalaa gacankiisa marka uu cunayo caleemaha geedaha.

It uses its trunk when it eats the leaves of trees.

Den använder sin snabel när den äter bladen på träden.

Weydiimo

Questions

Frågor

weydiin pl. **weydiimo** is a traditional Somali word, whereas **su'aal**, pl. **su'aalo** is an Arabic borrowing with exactly the same meaning

Ka jawaab su'aalah.

Answer these questions

Besvara de här frågorna

1. Maroodigu midabkee ayuu leeyahay?

What color does the elephant have?

Vilken färg har elefanten?

2. Maxaan ku magacawnaa sanka maroodiga?

What do we call the elephant's nose?

Vad kallar vi elefantens nos för?

3. Maroodigu muxuu **u** isticmaalaa sankiisa?
 What does the elephant use its nose **for**?
 Vad använder elefanten sin nos till?
4. Maaroodigu muxuu cunaa?
 What does the elephant eat?
 Vad äter elefanten?
 Sawirkan ku muuji qaybihiisa.
 Show its (body) parts in this picture.
 Visa dess (kroppen)delar på den här bilden.
 Isticmaal erayadan: dheg, gacan, il, sayn.
 Use these words: ear, trunk, eye, tail.
 Använd de här orden: öra, snabel, öga, svans.

10. Solutions

10.1 Exercise

- 2.
- Positive present tense: Waxa uu aadaa dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.
 Negative present tense: Ma **aado** dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.
 Ma uu aado dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.
 Muu aado dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.
- Positive past tense: Waxa uu **aaday** dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.
 Negative past tense: Ma **aadin** dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.
 Ma uu aadin dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.
 Muu aadin dugsiga hoose ee Sheekh Bashiir.
3. Waxa aan dhigtaa fasalka labaad.
 Ma dhigto fasalka labaad.
 Ma aan dhigto fasalka labaad.
 Maan dhigto fasalka labaad.
 simple: Waxa aan dhigtay fasalka labaad.
 progressive: Waxa aan dhiganayay fasalka labaad.
 simple: Ma dhigan(in) fasalka labaad.
 Ma aan dhigan(in) fasalka labaad.
 Maan dhigan(in) fasalka labaad.
 progressive: Ma dhiganayn(in) fasalka labaad.
 Ma aan dhiganayn(in) fasalka labaad.
 Maan dhiganayn(in) fasalka labaad.
4. Hooyo cunto ayaa ay karinaysaa.
 Hooyo cunto ma karinayso.
 Hooyo cunto ma ay karinayso.
 Hooyo cunto may karinayso.
 simple: Hooyo cunto ayaa ay karinaysay.
 progressive: Hooyo cunto ayaa ay karisay.
 simple: Hooyo cunto ma karinayn(in).
 Hooyo cunto ma ay karinayn(in).
 Hooyo cunto may karinayn(in).

progressive: Hooyo cunto ma karin(in).

Hooyo cunto ma ay karin(in).

Hooyo cunto may karin(in).

5. Aabbe beerta ayaa uu falayaa.

Aabbe beerta ma falayo.

was not culitvating: Aabbe beerta ma falayn(in)

did not cultivate: ma fal-in

6. Safiya waxa ay siddaa biyo.

Safiya ma siddo biyo.

Biyo ma sidin.

7. Aamina waxa ay la socotaa Safiya.

Aamina lama (ay) socoto Safiya.

lama socon(in) Safiya.

(dialectal: Aamina ma la socoto Safiya.)

8. Wawa ay tagayaan guriga.

Wawa ay tágayaan guriga.

Má (ay) tágayáan guriga.

9. Wawa uu aadaa dugsiga.

Wawa uu aadaa dugsiga.

Ma (uu / Muu) aado dugsiga.

10. Wawa ay u socotaa guriga.

Uma socoto guriga.

10.2 Translate into Somali

1. Give me the book that I am reading.

I sii buuggii aan akhrinayo.

2. Give me a book that you like.

I sii buug aad jeceshahay.

3. Sahra likes the car that Maryan owns/has.

Sahro waxa ay jeceshahay baabuurkii ay Maryan haysato.

Sahra waxa ay jeceshahay gaadhiga ay Maryan leedahay.

Sahra waxay jeceshahay baabuurka ay Maryan leedahay.

4. We will visit the school that these children study at.

Wawa aynu booqan doonaa dugsiga ay carruurtani ka dhigato.

Wawa aannu booqan doonaa dugsiga ay carruurtani ku dhigtaan.

Wawa aan booqan doonaa dugsiga ay carruurtani wax ka bartaan. ‘where they learn things’

5. They are looking at the cat that is sleeping on the table.

Wawa ay firiinayaan bisadda ku dul hurudda miiska.

Wawa ay fiirinayaan bisadda ku hurdaysa miiska dushiisa.

Wawa ay firinayaan bisaddii ku hurudda miiska

6. I like the children that study at this school.

Wawa aan jeclahay carruurta ka dhigata dugsigan.

Wawa aan jeclahay carruurta ku dhigta dugsigan.

dhigata - reduced present tense feminine singular

dhigta - reduced present tense plural

7. She lives in a city that is situated at the coast.

Wawa ay ku nooshahay magaalo ku taalla xeebta.

8. He has a sister that is a teacher.

Wawa uu leeyahay walaal macallimad ah.